Bit by Bit

Connect

الصف الرابع الابتدائى
الفصل الدراسى الأول

Parents' Guide دليل ولى الأمر

Primary 4
1st. Term





Egyptian Knowledge Bank
بنك المعرفة المصري



QR Codes

Listen to Vocabulary & Audioscripts





التوزيع: ١٠ شارع كامل صدقى - الفجالة - القاهرة
تليفون: ٢٥٩١٩١٦٥
للاستعلام وإبداء الآراء والإقتراحات - الإدارة/ تليفون: ٢٥٨٨٠١٠٢

2024



Welcome to Connect Primary 4

أهلا بكم مع سلسلة كونكت
الصف الرابع الابتدائى

Aims of the Parents' Guide

This Parents' Guide creates an enjoyable and engaging environment full of fun engaging activities, to encourage the students' language development.

The Parents' Guide aims to give Primary Four students the tools they need to develop their knowledge and use of English, and to increase their grasp of both the spoken and the written language, including basic phonetic sounds.

The course has been carefully designed to support whole child development; it not only supports the language development of the child, but also attends to their physical, cognitive, social and emotional needs.

Therefore, the activities combine life skills, values, issues and challenges, and Content and Language Integrated Learning (CLIL) with games, stories and projects. This is done in order to create a comprehensive, successful learning experience.

أهداف دليل ولى الأمر

يقدم دليل ولى الأمر إطار شيق وجذاب مع كثير من الانشطة الممتعة وذلك لتشجيع التلاميذ فى تطوير اللغة.

يهدف دليل ولى الأمر إلى توفير الأدوات المطلوبة لتلاميذ الصف الرابع الابتدائى لزيادة معلوماتهم وتطوير استخدامهم للغة الانجليزية سواء فى مهارات التحدث أو الكتابة بالإضافة إلى اصوات النطق الاساسية.

وقد تم اعداد هذا المنهج بعناية لمساعدة تطوير التلاميذ بشكل عام ليس فى اللغة وحسب ولكن ايضاً يقدم لهم ما يلبى احتياجاتهم النفسية والمعرفية والاجتماعية والعاطفية.

ولذلك فان الأنشطة تجمع بين المهارات الحياتية والقيم والقضايا والتحديات وتم تضمين المحتوى بألعاب وقصص ومشروعات. وتم عمل كل ذلك لخلق مجال تعلم متكامل وناجح.

Teaching phonics

The teaching of phonics plays an important role in developing literacy. An awareness of phonics facilitates the students' ability to discriminate between similar sounds and this develops their listening skills.

تدريس الصوتيات

يلعب تدريس الصوتيات دورًا هامًا في تطوير معرفة القراءة والكتابة. يعمل الوعي بالصوتيات على تسهيل قدرة التلاميذ على التمييز بين الأصوات المماثلة وبذلك يطور مهارات الاستماع الخاصة بهم.

Stories, activities, and songs promote and develop critical thinking and problem solving skills. The aim is to make thinking fun for children. While learning English, specific attention should be dedicated to the development of a child's ability to recall information, ask questions, make decisions, solve problems, evaluate and organize information. Within the materials as a whole, the students actively contribute to their own cognitive development, which helps to create confident, smart, early thinkers.

تعمل القصص والأنشطة والأغاني على تعزيز وتطوير مهارات التفكير النقدى وحل المشكلات. الهدف هو جعل التفكير ممتع للأطفال. أثناء تعلم اللغة الإنجليزية ، ينبغي تخصيص اهتمام خاص لتطوير قدرة الطفل على تذكر المعلومات وطرح الأسئلة واتخاذ القرارات وحل المشكلات وتقييم وتنظيم المعلومات. وفى المادة الدراسية المقدمة، يساهم التلاميذ بشكل فعال في تطويرهم المعرفي، مما يساعد على خلق مفكرين مبتكرين واثقين وأذكياء.

Teaching values

Values education is the teaching of values such as tolerance, honesty, cooperation and independence. These values help to create good citizens, and are very important development step for children of this age.

تعليم القيم

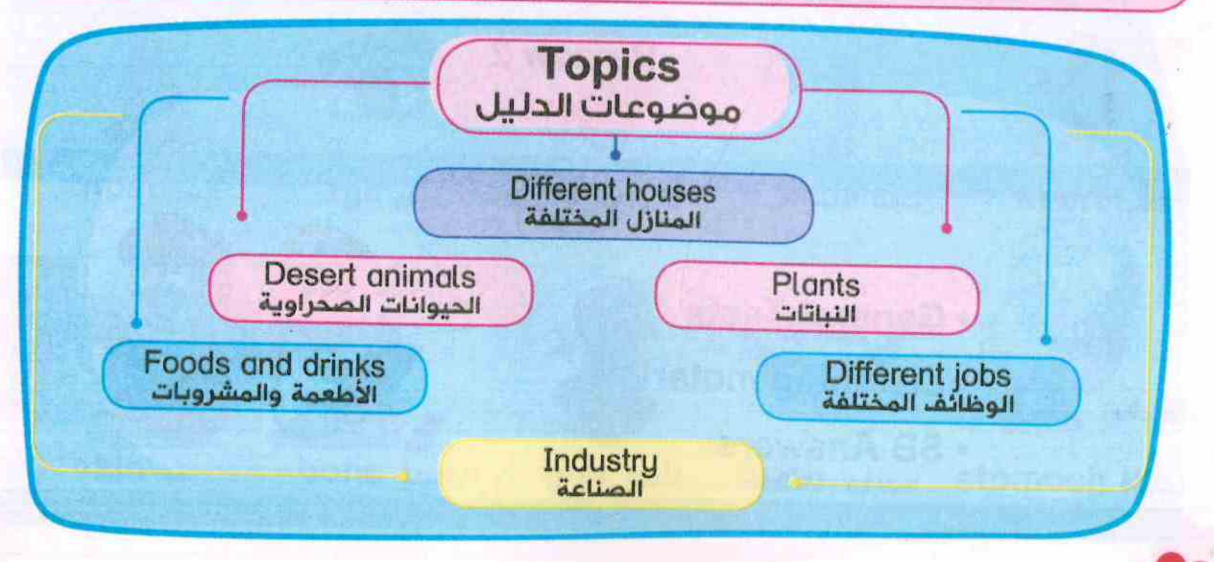
إن تعليم القيم هو تعليم القيم مثل التسامح والصدق والتعاون والاستقلال. هذه القيم تساعد على خلق مواطنين صالحين، وهي خطوة إنمائية مهمة جدًا للأطفال في هذا العمر.

The five major areas identified by the framework are:

1- Non-discrimination issues
2- Environmental responsibility issues
3- Preventative and therapeutic health issues
4- Loyalty and belonging issues
5- Community participation issues

المجالات الخمسة الرئيسية المقدمة فى المنهج هى:

١- قضايا عدم التمييز
٢- قضايا المسؤولية عن البيئة
٣- قضايا الصحة الوقائية والعلاجية
٤- قضايا الولاء والإنتماء
٥ - قضايا المشاركة المجتمعية





Contents



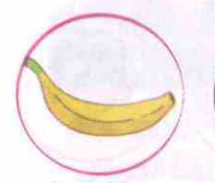




مراجعة على ماسبق دارسته بالصف الثالث الابتدائى

A Revision on Vocabulary مراجعة على المفردات

Healthy food & drinks الأطعمة والمشروبات الصحية











banana	apple	water	fish	fruit	vegetables
موزة	تفاحة	مياه	سمك	فاكهة	خضراوات

Unhealthy food & drinks الأطعمة والمشروبات غير الصحية











chocolate	cola	pizza	cake	ice cream
شيكولاته	كولا (مياه غازية)	بيتزا	تورتة	آيس كريم

Parts of the body أجزاء الجسم











foot قدم | feet اقدام | leg رجل | mouth فم | arm ذراع











nose انف | eye عين | hand يد | knee ركبة | heart قلب











skin جلد | bone عظمة | hair شعر | teeth أسنان | stomach معدة



Feelings المشاعر








happy	sad	hungry	thirsty	angry	excited	tired
سعيد	حزين	جوعان	عطشان	غاضب	متحمس	متعب

Illnesses الأمراض








sick	headache	cough	cold	fever	hurt
مريض	صداع	كحة / سعال	برد	حُمى	يؤلم

At home فى المنزل







cupboard	table	television	chair	armchair
خزانة/دولاب	ترابيزة / منضدة	تليفزيون	كرسى	كرسى ذو مسندين






clock	bookcase	couch	lamp
ساعة حائط	خزانة كتب	كنبة	مصباح / اباجورة

At the zoo فى حديقة الحيوان





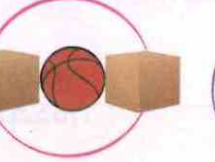
zoo	lion	elephant	giraffe
حديقة الحيوان	اسد	فيل	زرافة





hippo	panda	penguin
فرس النهر(سيد قشطة)	باندا	بطريق

Prepositions of place حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان







between	on	behind	next to	in
بين	على	خلف	بجوار	فى

B Revision on Language Functions مراجعة على الوظائف اللغوية



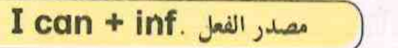
1 لتسال شخص (كيف تشعر؟) نقول

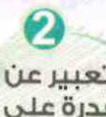
How do you feel? كيف تشعر؟

وللرد:

I feel + صفة. أنا أشعر بـ ......

- **How do you feel?**
  I feel sad.



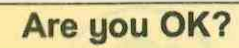


2 للتعبير عن القدرة على فعل شيء نقول

I can + inf. مصدر الفعل أستطيع

- I **can make** you a sandwich!

3 للسؤال بمعنى (هل انت بخير؟) نقول



Are you OK?

وللرد:

- Yes, I'm OK. / Or No, I feel sick.

---

4 للسؤال بمعنى مما تشكو؟ نقول

What's the matter?

وللرد:

I have a + المرض. - أنا مصاب بـ + اسم المرض

- What's the matter?
- I have a headache.

---

5 للاقتراح نستخدم :

❶ **Let's + inf.** مصدر الفعل — هيا بنا

❷ **How about + verb + ing..?** — ماذا عن؟

- Let's watch the lions.
- How about going to the pandas?

◉ وللرد بالموافقة :

- Good idea! فكرة رائعة.

---

6 للسؤال عن المكان نستخدم

Where + is / are + مكان / اماكن?

◉ وللاجابة نستخدم جمل اعطاء الاتجاهات :

•go straight سر بشكل مستقيم	•turn right استدر يمينا	•turn left استدر يسارا
•They're on the right. انهم على اليمين.	•They're on the left. انهم على اليسار.	

- Where is the zoo?
- Go straight, turn right, then turn left.

7 للسؤال عن الاشياء الموجودة بالمنزل؟

- What's in the living room?

◉ وللرد :

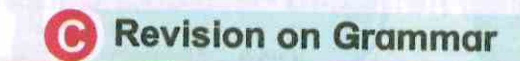
◉ **There's a/an ....الشيء + حروف الجر + شيء.**

- There's a lamp next to the television.
- There's a cupboard behind the table.

◉ نستخدم قبل الاسم المفرد الذى يعد a/an حيث تاتى an قبل الكلمات التى تبدأ باصوات متحركة.

◉ الحروف المتحركة هى (a / e / i / o / u) وباقى الحروف ساكنة وياتى قبلها a:

- a ⟶ TV   an ⟶ armchair

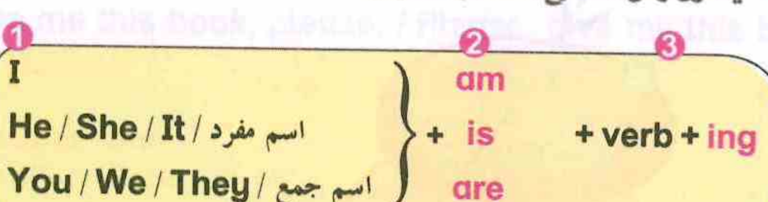


C Revision on Grammar مراجعة على القواعد اللغوية

Present continuous زمن المضارع المستمر

◉ نستخدم زمن المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن شئ يحدث الان (اثناء الكلام)

◉ يتكون زمن المضارع المستمر كما يلى:



❶	❷	❸
I	am	
He / She / It / اسم مفرد	+ is	+ verb + ing
You / We / They / اسم جمع	are	

- I'm drawing a cat.

Question

◉ للسؤال ماذا تفعل؟ (فى المضارع المستمر)

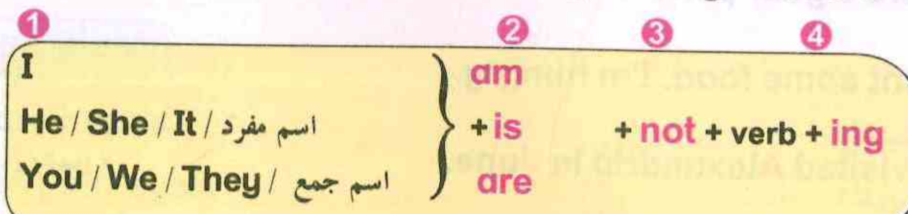
- What are you doing? ماذا تفعل؟

◉ وللإجابة نقول:

- I am taking a photo.

Negative

◉ لنفى الفعل فى زمن المضارع المستمر نضع not بين am / is/ are والفعل:



❶	❷	❸	❹
I	am		
He / She / It / اسم مفرد	+ is	+ not	+ verb + ing
You / We / They / اسم جمع	are		

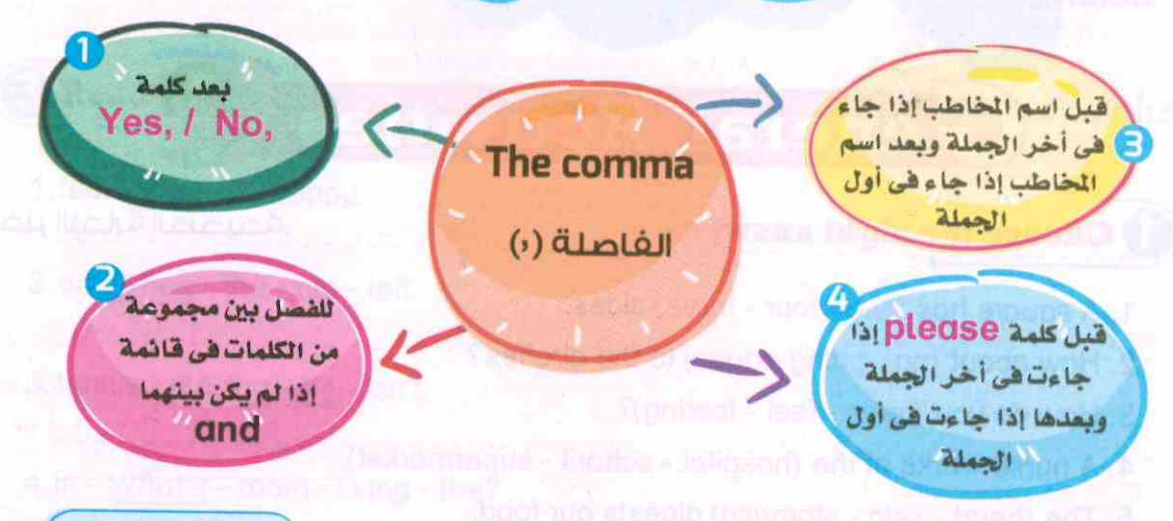
- I am not playing sports.
- He is not taking photos.

Punctuation
علامات الترقيم



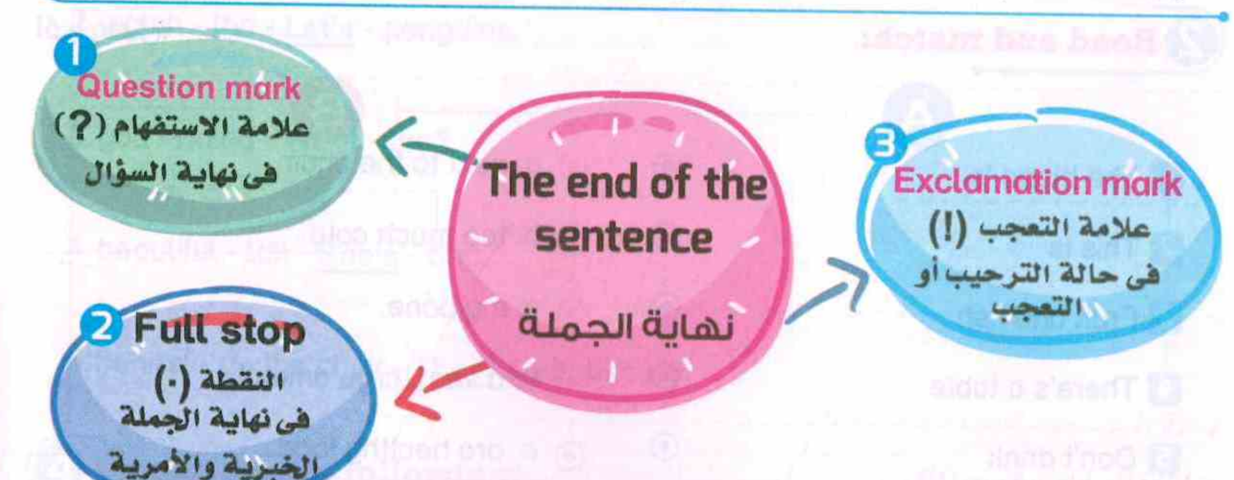
Examples:

1. Mrs Manar is a teacher. (جملة خبرية)
2. Close your book. (جملة أمرية)
3. Where's your pen? (جملة استفهامية)
4. I want some food. I'm hungry. (الضمير I)
5. We visited Alexandria in June. (أسماء مدن وشهور)
6. Mr Ashraf plays football on Sunday. (الألقاب وأيام الأسبوع)



Examples:

- Yes, they are. / No, they aren't. (بعد Yes, / No,)
- I want paper, pencils and pens. (للفصل بين مجموعة كلمات فى قائمة)
- Come here, Nabil. / Nabil, come here. (اسم مخاطب)
- Give me this book, please. / Please, give me this book. (كلمة Please)



Examples:

1. We are pupils. (جملة خبرية)
2. Close your eyes. (جملة أمرية)
3. What's your name? (جملة استفهامية)
4. Hello! Hatem. (علامة تعجب)

General Activities



1 Choose the right answer: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. A square has (two - four - three) sides.
2. How about (go - going - goes) to the giraffes?
3. How do you (feels - feel - feeling)?
4. A nurse works at the (hospital - school - supermarket).
5. The (heart - skin - stomach) digests our food.

---

1. A: What (color - time - book) is it? B: It's three o'clock.
2. Let's (clean - cleaning - cleans) the house.
3. There's a lamp (behind - between - next) to the armchair.
4. She's (drawing - draw - draws) a picture.
5. (When's - Where's - What's) the matter?

2 Read and match: اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 The hippo is	a. next to the chair.
2 This is	b. too much cola.
3 Fruit and fish	c. my bone.
4 There's a table	d. a very large animal.
5 Don't drink	e. are healthy food.



A	B
1 I feel	a. a headache.
2 I can make	b. the kitchen?
3 She has	c. sports.
4 What's in	d. sick.
5 She isn't playing	e. you a sandwich.

3 Read and reorder the following: اقرأ ورتب الجمل:

1. feel - Yes, - I - happy.

----

2. on - They - the - are - left.

----

3. tennis - playing - He - isn't.

----

4. in - What's - room - living - the?

----

5. about - going - How - the elephants - to?

---

1. green - It's - T-shirt - a

----

2. watch - the - Let's - penguins.

----

3. you - doing - What - are?

----

4. beautiful - tall - She's - and.

----

5. behind - a - the chair - There's - bookcase.

----

4 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات ترقيم للآتى:

1. do you like cakes --------------------------------
2. my knee hurts --------------------------------
3. where's the park --------------------------------
4. it's on the computer --------------------------------
5. there's a couch in the living room --------------------------------



How to write a paragraph?
كيف تكتب فقرة انشائية؟

كيفية الإجابة على سؤال (paragraph)

يطلب من التلاميذ كتابة موضوع من ٢٤ كلمة من موضوعات كتاب المدرسة ويعطي للتلاميذ عناصر مساعدة مثل كلمتين أو سؤالين أو ملف حقائق لذلك نقدم شرح لكيفية التعامل مع هذا السؤال:

- حتى تكون الجملة بشكل صحيح يجب أن نتعلم مكونات الجملة وترتيبها فى اللغة الإنجليزية حيث تتكون من:

أولا ترتيب الجملة

1 فاعل			2 فعل		3 تكملة الجملة
اسم شخص	مكان	شىء	مضارع بسيط / مستمر	ماضى بسيط / مستمر	مكان / ظرف زمان / صفة / حال
Adel	park	table	is eating / eat / eats	was going / went	school / yesterday tall / well

ثانيا: صيغ الجمل المختلفة

فاعل + verb to be + صفة	Eman is hungry.
فاعل + verb to be + وظيفة	Ashraf is a doctor.
مكان + حرف جر + فعل + فاعل	We went to the circus.
زمن + حرف جر + فعل + فاعل	We play on Friday.
مفعول + فعل + فاعل	I help her.
الساعة + حرف جر + فعل + فاعل	I sleep at 10 o'clock.

Write a paragraph of about TWENTY FOUR (24) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من ٢٤ كلمة عن:

Your weekend

shopping - bought

I went shopping last weekend. I went with my mother by taxi. I bought a blue T-shirt and white socks. Then I ate ice cream. I had a great time.



How to write an email?
كيف تكتب إيميل؟

To: البريد الإلكترونى الخاص بالمرسل إليه:

From: البريد الإلكترونى الخاص بالراسل:

Subject: موضوع أو عنوان الرسالة:

Dear + اسم المرسل إليه ,

How are you? I want to tell you about

تكتب هنا جمل عادية كإننا بنكتب براجراف عادى----------

See you soon.

اسم الراسل

- اتبع الخطوات الآتية لكتابة بريد إلكترونى بشكل منتظم:

١- فى السطر الأول من بريدك الإلكترونى أبدأ بكلمة "Dear" أو "Hi" ثم اكتب اسم المرسل إليه:

٢- فى السطر الثانى ابدأ بـ: "I'm happy to write to you." "Thanks for writing to me."

٣- أسأل عن أحوال صديقك بـ: "How are you?" / "How are things?" / "How's life?"

٤- اذكر سبب إرسالك للإيميل ولماذا كتبته: I want to tell you about ----------

٥- يجب أن يحتوى بريدك الإلكترونى على فكرة واحدة فقط وليس أكثر من فكرة.

٦- عند الكتابة إلى صديق يمكنك استخدام لغة غير رسمية مثل كلمات: "awesome" أو "cool"

٧- قم بإنهاء بريدك الإلكترونى بعبارات مثل: "Write soon." أو "See you soon." أو "By for you now." أو "Hope to hear from you soon."

لاحظ بعض التحويلات الآتية عند كتابة البريد الإلكترونى:

١- إذا كان فى السؤال كلمة him أو her أو them قم بتحويلها فى الإيميل إلى كلمة you.

٢- إذا كان فى السؤال كلمة your نحولها إلى كلمة my.

٣- إذا كان فى السؤال كلمة you نحولها إلى كلمة I.

• يأتى السؤال كالتالى:

Write an email of about TWENTY FOUR (24) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب إيميل من ٢٤ كلمة عن:

Your city, Alexandria

clean - beautiful places

To your friend Mona to tell her about your city Alexandria. Your name is Rasha and your email address is rasha.13@gmail.com and your friend's email address is mona29@yahoo.com.

New Message

To	① ... ايميل المرسل اليه	Cc Bcc
From	② ... ايميل الراسل	
Subject	③ ... موضوع الرسالة	

④ Dear / Hi اسم المرسل اليه (Mona),

جملة افتتاحية ⑤ → I'm happy to write to you.

موضوع الايميل ⑥ → I want to tell you about my city Alexandria. I live in Alexandria with my family in a big house. In the summer we go to the beach. It's clean and there are beautiful places to visit.

جملة ختامية ⑦ → See you soon.

تحية الخاتمة ⑧ Yours / Love

اسم الراسل (Rasha)

Send

لاحظ

إذا لم يكن بالسؤال عنوان البريد الاليكترونى الخاص بك وبصديقك
اكتب اسم صديقك فى :To واسمك فى :From

Lesson 1 Let's remember!

1 What can you see in the photo? Look and say:

ماذا ترى فى الصورة ؟ انظر وقل :



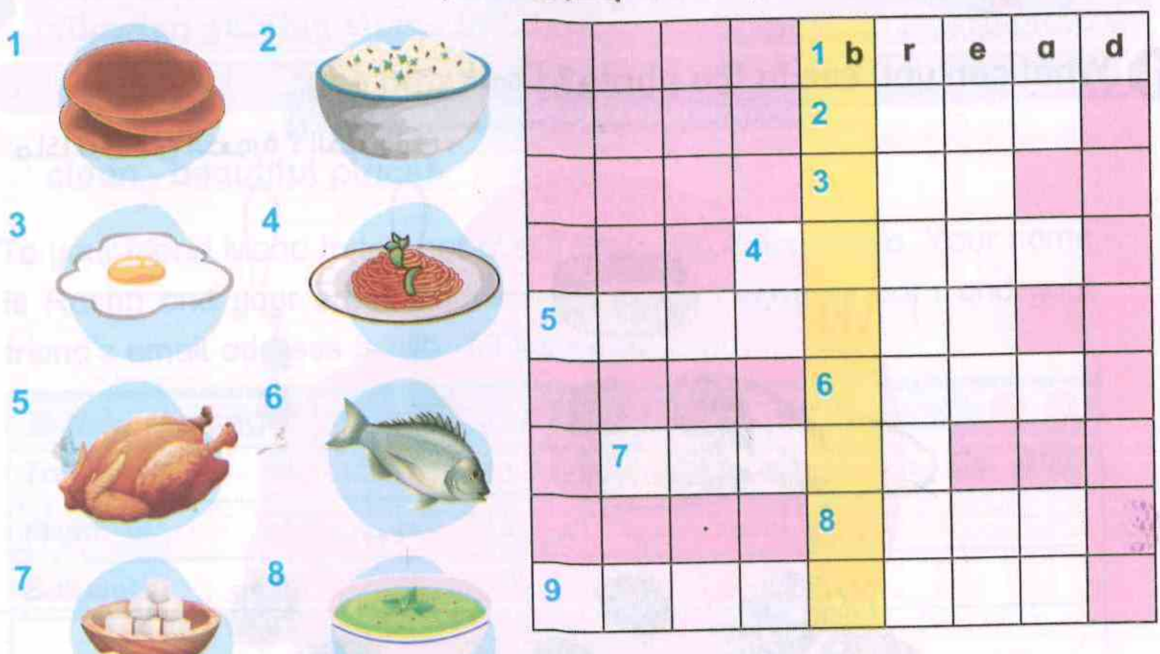
2 Read and match the questions and answers:

اقرأ ثم صل السؤال بإجابته:

1 How tall is the Cairo Tower?	a. I visited the bazaar. I bought a bag.
2 What would you like?	b. It's 187 meters.
3 Where are you from?	c. It's on January 19th.
4 What did you do yesterday?	d. I'm from China. I'm Chinese.
5 How long is the Sphinx?	e. It's seventy-three meters long.
6 When's your birthday?	f. I'd like some water, please.

3 Look and write. What is the mystery word in yellow?

انظر وأكتب ما هى كلمة السر المظللة باللون الأصفر؟

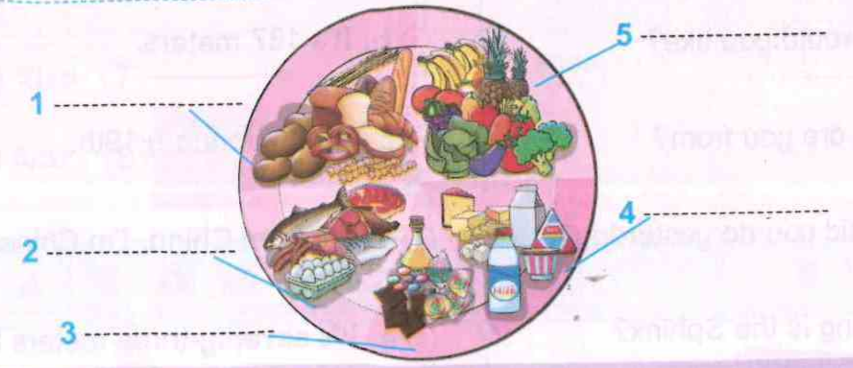


The mystery word is: ---------------

4 Look and write:

انظر واكتب :

bread, cereals and potatoes - fruit and vegetables
milk and dairy products - meat and fish - sugar and fats



1 ---------------
2 ---------------
3 ---------------
4 ---------------
5 ---------------

5 What is a healthy diet? Look and say:

ماهو النظام الغذائى الصحى؟ انظر وقل :

Lesson 2 Let's remember!

1 Read and order:

اقرأ ورتب:

April	◯	March	◯
February	◯	September	◯
June	◯	December	◯
October	◯	July	◯
August	◯	May	◯
January	1	November	◯

2 Listen, answer and write:

استمع واجب واكتب:

استمع إلى الأسئلة

Tapescript نص الاستماع

1- What's the weather like?
2- Where's he from?
3- What do you drink for breakfast?
4- What did you buy?
5- How much is it?
6- What is it?
7- What's it made of?
8- How much money do you have?

❶ It's sunny.
❷ ---------------
❸ ---------------
❹ ---------------

5L.E.

❺ ---------------
❻ ---------------
❼ ---------------
❽ ---------------

3 Write about your weekend. You can use the words below:

اكتب عن عطلة نهاية الأسبوع الخاصة بك. يمكنك استخدام الكلمات التى بالأسفل:

go - see - buy - have

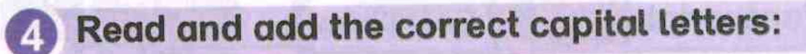
I went shopping last weekend. I _______________

I went shopping. I ......

____

I _____________________________________

I had a great time!



4 Read and add the correct capital letters:

أقرأ واضف الحروف الكبيرة فى مكانها الصحيح :



hi! I'm shorouk! i live in alexandria. the library of alexandria

is a big and famous library in my city. yesterday it was sunny.

my family visited the park at the montaza palace.





Fourth Year
Primary

2023 - 2024

Specification for Fourth year primary

مواصفات الصف الرابع الابتدائي ٢٠٢٣ - ٢٠٢٤

Marks:30 | Time: One hour and a half

A- Listening (4 Marks)

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): **(4 Marks)**

A listening text of about **FORTY (40)** words followed by **FOUR (4)** separate sentences is provided. Learners are asked to write **T (True)** or **F (False)** for each sentence based on what they have heard. **(One mark each)**

B- Reading (15 Marks)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: **(4 Marks)**

Learners are given **FOUR (4) MCQs (2 vocabulary & 2 structures)** based on the Set Books. They are asked to choose the correct answer from the **FOUR (4)** options given. **(One mark each)**

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: **(3 Marks)**

An unseen text from **FIFTY (50)** to **SIXTY (60)** words with **THREE (3)** deletions is provided. A list of **FOUR (4)** separate words related to vocabulary is also given. Learners are asked to complete each deletion in the text with **ONE** of the **FOUR (4)** words given in the box. The first sentence should be written in full.

(One mark each)

4 Read and match (A) with (B): **(4 Marks)**

FOUR (4) premises in column **(A)** and **FIVE (5)** responses in column **(B)** are provided. Learners are asked to match each premise with its suitable response. The items can be jobs and descriptions, sentence halves, words and definitions.... etc.

(One mark each)

5 Read the text and answer the questions: (4 Marks)

An unseen literary or informational text from **SEVENTY (70)** to **EIGHTY (80)** words is provided. The text should be at the appropriate difficulty level for **Primary Four**. Learners are asked to answer:

A. TWO (2) MCQ questions with FOUR (4) options each dealing with TWO of the following reading comprehension skills:

- Identify the general idea of the text.
- Demonstrate understanding of specific details in a text.
- Determine the meaning of words and phrases in a text. **(One mark each)**

B. TWO (2) open ended questions dealing with TWO of the following reading comprehension skills:

- Describe the relationship between two people, events, ideas, or pieces of information in a text.
- Make logical inferences from the text.
- Summarize the key supporting details and ideas in a text. **(One mark each)**

C- Writing (11 Marks)

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: (6 Marks)

THREE (3) scrambled statements (sentences and questions) with **SIX (6)** words each are provided. Learners are asked to order the words to form a correct sentence or question. **(Two marks each)**

7 Punctuate the following: (1 Mark)

A simple statement (sentence or question) of about **SIX (6)** words with **TWO (2)** missing punctuation marks is provided (**Capital letter / Full Stop / Question Mark / Exclamation Mark / Comma**). Learners are asked to punctuate them correctly. **(Half a mark each)**

8 Write a paragraph /email of about TWENTY FOUR (24) words using the following guiding elements: (4 Marks)

Learners are asked to write a paragraph or an email of not less than **TWENTY FOUR (24)** words using **TWO (2)** given guiding elements that can be words, questions, fact file... etc.



Theme 1

I discover myself

Unit 1

I feel good.

أشعر أني بخير

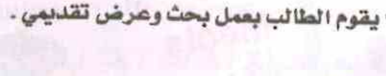
لنطق الكلمات الجديدة التي أعلاها علامة نجمة* أنظر آخر الوحدة






Objectives of the Unit أهداف الوحدة

1. Listen, read, research, and write about foods and how to keep healthy.
   - يستمع الطالب ويقرأ ويقوم بعمل بحث ويكتب عن أنواع الطعام المختلفة وكيف يحافظ على صحته.
2. Practice making sentences with and or but.
   - يتدرب الطالب على تكوين جمل باستخدام (و) أو (لكن).
3. Read and listen to a Chinese fable.
   - يقرأ الطالب ويستمع إلى أسطورة خرافية صينية.
4. Distinguish long and short vowels.
   - يفرق الطالب بين الأصوات المتحركة الممتدة والقصيرة.
5. Talk about a place in Egypt.
   - يتكلم الطالب عن مكان في مصر.
6. Research and make a presentation.
   - يقوم الطالب بعمل بحث وعرض تقديمي.







LESSON 1 ★ Food and drink

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



tomato ثمرة طماطم



rice* أرز

chicken دجاجة / لحم دجاج



potato ثمرة بطاطس



onion* بصلة

Food and drink الطعام والشراب

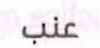


mango ثمرة مانجو

banana موزة



grapes عنب





milk لبن

watermelon بطيخة

sugarcane قصب السكر

Meals الوجبات

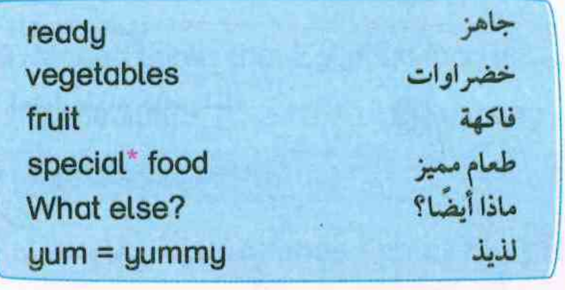
breakfast الافطار

lunch الغداء





dinner العشاء



Other words كلمات أخرى

ready	جاهز
vegetables	خضراوات
fruit	فاكهة
special* food	طعام مميز
What else?	ماذا أيضًا؟
yum = yummy	لذيذ

delicious*	لذيذ
country	دولة
healthy	صحي
Egyptian*	مصري
farmers	فلاحين / مزارعين

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
produce	ينتج	produced
raise	يربي (للحيوانات)	raised
look	يبدو	looked

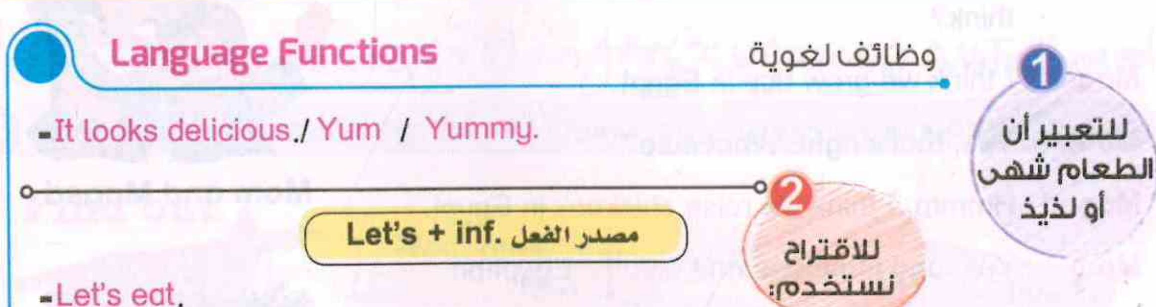
Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
grow	يزرع	grew
make	يعد الطعام	made
eat	يأكل	ate
keep	يربي (حيوانات)	kept
feed	يطعم	fed
think	يعتقد	thought



Definitions تعريفات

raise يربي : To keep and feed chickens to get eggs and meat.



Language Functions وظائف لغوية

1. للتعبير أن الطعام شهي أو لذيذ

- It looks delicious./ Yum / Yummy.

2. للاقتراح نستخدم:

Let's + inf. مصدر الفعل

- Let's eat.

Grammar قواعد لغوية

- عند جمع الأسماء نضيف آخر الاسم حرف (s):

- banana ⟶ bananas   onion ⟶ onions

- الأسماء التى تنتهي بالحروف (ch / sh / ss / o / s / x) يضاف آخرها (es) عند الجمع:

- mango ⟶ mangoes   potato ⟶ potatoes

- وهناك أسماء لا تجمع مثل بعض الأطعمة وكل المشروبات:

- milk - rice

- كلمة (chicken) لا تجمع لو كنا نقصد لحم الدجاج وتجمع لو اشرنا إلي الدجاج الحي.

Unit 1 I feel good

Study the following

1. Lunch is ready. - الغداء جاهز.
2. I made some special food for us. - أعدت طعام خاص لنا.
3. The food looks delicious. - يبدو الطعام شهى.
4. Which food comes from our country? - اى طعام يأتى من بلادنا ؟
5. We grow rice in Egypt. - نزرع الأرز فى مصر.
6. We raise chickens in Egypt. - نحن نربى الدجاج فى مصر.
7. Egyptian farmers produce many things. - يُنتج الفلاحون المصريون أشياء عديدة .
8. What meal are they having? - ما الوجبة التي يأكلوها ؟

1 Listen and read: Where are Mom and Maged? استمع واقرأ. أين الأم وماجد؟


استمع إلى النص:

Mom : Lunch is ready. I made some special food for us.

Maged : Mom, it looks delicious!

Mom : Which food comes from our country, do you think?

Maged : I think we grow rice in Egypt.

Mom : Yes, that's right. What else?

Maged : Hmmm, I think we raise chickens in Egypt.

Mom : Yes, and tomatoes and onions. Egyptian farmers produce many things you see on this table. Let's eat!

Maged : Yum!

Mom and Maged



2 Listen again and answer the questions:

استمع للنص السابق مرة آخرى واجب عن الاسئلة :

1. What meal are they having?

a breakfast b lunch c dinner

2. What do Egyptian farmers produce?

a fruit and vegetables b chickens c both a and b

3. Maged thinks that Egyptian food is ....

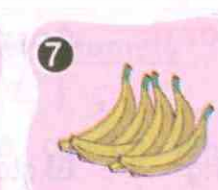
a healthy b yummy c both a and b

3 Look and write: انظر واكتب:

bananas - chicken - grapes - mangoes - milk
onions - potatoes - rice - sugarcane - watermelon

1 
2 
3 
4 
5 

chicken ------ grapes --- Milk -- onions - rice ---

6 
7 
8 
9 
10 

Potatoes - bananas - Mangoes - sugarcane - Watermelon

4 Listen, check, and say: استمع إلي الكلمات في (Exercise 3) وتأكد ثم قل:

Find out



What other animals do farmers raise in Egypt?
ما الحيوانات الاخرى التى يربيها المزارعون فى مصر؟

Egyptian farmers raise chickens and sheep.

Did you know? هل تعلم؟

Did you know that in Japan you can buy a watermelon that looks like a pyramid?
هل تعلم أن اليابان تستطيع أن تشتري بطيخة علي شكل هرم؟



Activities

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

	True	False
1 Farmers are good for our country.		
2 Farmers grow onions and carrots.		
3 Farmers raise lions in Egypt.		
4 There are healthy food in Egypt.		

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Let's ………… our lunch.
   a eats b eat c eating d ate
2. We raise ………… to get meat.
   a chickens b onions c tomatoes d trees
3. Egyptian farmers ………… rice in Egypt.
   a raise b grow c think d play
4. A: ………… meal are they having? B: Lunch.
   a When b Where c Who d What

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

things - animals - ready - produce

Egyptian farmers are important in our country. They ❶ ………… our food. They grow many ❷ ………… . They can keep many ❸ ………… . They can raise chickens, too.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

4 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 Egyptian farmers	a. chickens in Egypt.
2 The food	b. looks delicious.
3 They are	c. rice in Egypt.
4 We grow	d. produce many things.
	e. having lunch.

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. lunch - ready - **Our** - is.
2. raise - chickens - in - **We** - Egypt.
3. grow - Egypt - **Farmers** - in - rice.
4. from - food - country - **Which** - comes - our?

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

what animals do farmers raise in Egypt

7 Write a paragraph of TWENTY FOUR (24) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٢٤) كلمة عن:

مجاب عنه اخر الوحدة

Healthy food

vegetables - chicken



LESSON 2 ★I am healthy

استمع إلى المفردات:



play football يلعب كرة القدم



play basketball يلعب كرة السلة



drink water يشرب مياه



exercise يتمرن

Healthy صحي



eat vegetables يأكل خضراوات



drink cola يشرب كولا

Unhealthy غير صحي





eat candy يأكل حلوى



play video games يلعب ألعاب الفيديو

Other words كلمات أخرى



on the weekend	في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع	busy	مشغول
really	بالفعل	scientist	عالم
different	مختلف	plants	نباتات
awesome	رائع	interesting	شيق
milkshake	مخفوق اللبن	burger	سندوتش برجر
wheelchair	كرسي متحرك	salads	سلطة
basketball	كرة السلة	week	أسبوع

Help your child learn about healthy and unhealthy things. ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن الأشياء الصحية وغير الصحية.

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
practice	يمارس	practiced
talk	يتكلم	talked
look at	ينظر إلى	looked at
walk	يمشي	walked

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
do	يفعل	did
drink	يشرب	drank

Grammar قواعد لغوية



And و / But لكن

◉ نستخدم (and) بمعنى (و) للربط بين جملتين او اسمين أو صفتين لهما نفس الفكرة أي انها تضيف للمعنى.

- I play tennis and basketball.
- I like fruit and vegetables.

◉ و نستخدم (but) بمعنى (لكن) للربط بين جملتين أو صفتين بينهما تناقض أو بين جملة مثبتة وأخرى منفية.

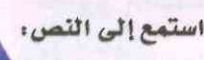
- I don't eat candy, but I like fruit.
- The desert is very interesting, but it is very hot.

Study the following

1. Do you think you're healthy?
   - هل تعتقد أنك بصحة جيدة؟
2. I do a lot of sport at school.
   - امارس أنواع كثيرة من الرياضة فى المدرسة.
3. I don't eat candy, but I like fruit.
   - لا اتناول الحلوى لكنى أحب الفاكهة.
4. I'm in a wheelchair basketball team.
   - أنا في فريق كرة السلة للكراسي المتحركة.
5. I drink cola, but I want to drink more water.
   - اشرب المياه الغازية (الكولا) لكنى اريد شرب الكثير من الماء.
6. Dad is a scientist and he likes looking at animals and plants.
   - ابى عالم وهو يحب أن ينظر إلى الحيوانات والنباتات.
7. The desert is very interesting, but it is very hot.
   - الصحراء شيقة جدًا لكنها حارة جدا.
8. I want something sweet.
   - أريد شيء ما فيه سكريات.
9. I don't play video games because I'm very busy.
   - لا العب العاب الفيديو لأنني مشغول جدًا.

1 Listen to Adam, Dareen, and Judy talking about being healthy. Label the photos:

استمع إلى (آدم ودارين وجودى) حيث يتكلموا حول أن تكون بصحة جيدة. وضع الاسم تحت الصورة :



استمع إلى النص:





Tapescript نص الاستماع

Narrator : 1

Interviewer : Do you think you're healthy, Judy?

Judy : Yes, I do. I do a lot of sport(1) at school. On the weekend(2), I walk to my grandma's house with my family. I really like walking because I can talk to my mom and dad. We can see the different houses(3) and shops. I don't eat candy, but I like fruit. My favorite fruits are bananas and watermelon. My mom makes an awesome(4) banana milkshake(5)!.

Narrator : 2

Interviewer : Do you think you're healthy, Adam?

Adam : Yes, I'm in a wheelchair basketball team(6) at school. We practice three times(7) every week. I drink cola, but I want to drink more water. I don't play video games because I'm very busy. I play basketball in the park.

Narrator : 3

Interviewer : Do you think you're healthy, Dareen?

Dareen : Yes, I think I'm healthy, My mom and I go walking in the desert with my dad. Dad is a scientist(8) and he likes looking at animals and plants. We go with him every weekend. It's very interesting, but it's very hot sometimes(9)! I only(10) drink water because I don't like cola. I love burgers, but I only eat one a week. My mom makes yummy salads.

Arabic Meaning

١- رياضة
٢- في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع
٣- منازل مختلفة
٤- رائع
٥- مخفوق اللبن
٦- فريق كرة السلة للكراسي المتحركة
٧- ثلاث مرات
٨- عالم
٩- أحيانا
١٠- فقط

Help your child listen and answer the questions. ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويجيب عن الأسئلة.



1 

2 

3 

Judy ....

2 Listen again and answer the questions:

استمع للنص السابق مرة أخرى وأجب عن الأسئلة :

1. Who never drinks cola?

---

2. Who plays basketball?

---

3. Who doesn't eat candy?

---

3 Listen again and complete the sentences with (and) or (but):

استمع للنص السابق مرة أخرى وأكمل الجمل باستخدام (و) أو (لكن) :

1. I don't eat candy, ... I eat fruit when I want something sweet.
2. I don't drink cola .... other unhealthy drinks.
3. I play basketball .... I play football in the park.
4. Dad is a scientist .... he likes looking at animals and plants.
5. It's a very interesting place, ... it's very hot sometimes!

Activities



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. I like chocolate .... ice cream.

a but b and c so d that

2. My dad is Egyptian, ... his dad is French.

a because b so c but d of

3. I don't eat candy, ... I like fruit.

a and b but c to d on

4. I practice basketball .... football.

a and b under c but d because

5. I want to play football, ... I'm ill.

a and b because c to d but

6. I eat vegetables .... I exercise.

a but b and c on d of

7. Waleed speaks English, ... he can't speak Chinese.

a but b because c and d to

8. My dad is a scientist .... he likes looking at animals and plants.

a to b and c but d of

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

but - healthy - drink - eats

My name is Soha. I like sports. I want to be ❶ ...., so I play football and basketball. I ❷ .... cola, ❸ .... I want to drink more water. I walk home from school every day.

-Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.



3 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 I drink water,	a. basketball.
2 I practice	b. eat candy?
3 My mom makes	c. but I don't drink cola.
4 Who doesn't	d. play video games.
	e. an awesome banana milkshake.

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. don't - I - candy - eat.

----

2. in - football - the park - I - play.

----

3. think - you - healthy - Do - you are?

----

4. hot - very - It's - desert - in - the.

----

5 Punctuate the following:

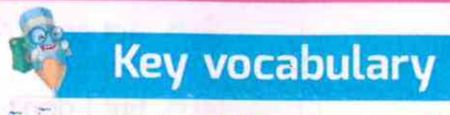
ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1. what healthy things do you do

----

2. my mom makes yummy salads

LESSON 3 ★ The empty pot: A folktale from China Pronunciation and Math



استمع إلى المفردات:



Key vocabulary


emperor امبراطور


palace قصر

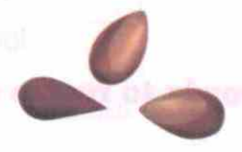

king ملك


gardener بستاني


China الصين


honest أمين


competition مسابقة


seeds بذور


empty pot أصيص زرع فارغ

Other words كلمات أخرى

folktale	أسطورة خرافية
important man	رجل مهم
nothing	لا شيء
someone	شخص ما

next	القادم
honesty	الأمانة
dead	ميت
everyone	كل شخص / الجميع

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماض
live	يعيش	lived
work	يعمل	worked
water	يسقي	watered
plant	يزرع	planted

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماض
say	يقول	said
take	يأخذ	took
grow	ينمو	grew
put	يضع	put

Help your child learn new words. ساعد طفلك ان يتعلم كلمات جديدة.

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماض
happen	يحدث	happened
try	يحاول	tried
look after	يعتني بـ	looked after
lie	يكذب	lied

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماض
bring	يحضر	brought
give	يعطي	gave
win	يفوز	won
lose	يخسر	lost

Definitions تعريفات

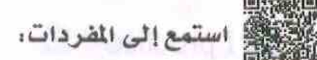
emperor	امبراطور	someone who is like a king	شخص مثل الملك
palace	قصر	a place where an emperor lives	مكان يعيش الأمبراطور فيه
honest	أمين	someone doesn't lie	شخص لا يكذب

Study the following

1. The most important man in China was the emperor.
   - كان الأمبراطور اهم رجل في الصين.
2. He lived in a beautiful palace.
   - عاش في قصر جميل.
3. There will be a competition.
   - سوف تكون هناك مسابقة.
4. I will give a seed to each gardener.
   - سوف أعطي بذرة لكل بستاني.
5. Cheng was very good at growing things and looking after his garden.
   - كان تشن جيدًا في زراعة الأشياء والأهتمام بحديقته.
6. He put the seed in the sun and gave it water.
   - وضع البذرة في الشمس واعطاها المياه.
7. The seeds I gave everyone were dead.
   - البذور التي أعطيتها لكل شخص كان ميتة.
8. You will be the next emperor.
   - سوف تكون الامبراطور القادم.
9. Honesty is more important than winning.
   - الأمانة اهم من الفوز.

LESSON 3

The empty pot: A folktale from China Pronunciation and Math




Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:









emperor امبراطور | palace قصر | king ملك | gardener بستاني | China الصين






honest أمين | competition مسابقة | seeds بذور | empty pot أصيص زرع فارغ

Other words كلمات أخرى

folktale	أسطورة خرافية	next	القادم
important man	رجل مهم	honesty	الأمانة
nothing	لا شيء	dead	ميت
someone	شخص ما	everyone	كل شخص / الجميع

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
live	يعيش	lived
work	يعمل	worked
water	يسقي	watered
plant	يزرع	planted

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
say	يقول	said
take	يأخذ	took
grow	ينمو	grew
put	يضع	put

Help your child learn new words. ساعد طفلك ان يتعلم كلمات جديدة.

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
happen	يحدث	happened
try	يحاول	tried
look after	يعتني بـ	looked after
lie	يكذب	lied

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
bring	يحضر	brought
give	يعطي	gave
win	يفوز	won
lose	يخسر	lost

Definitions تعريفات

emperor	امبراطور	someone who is like a king	شخص مثل الملك
palace	قصر	a place where an emperor lives	مكان يعيش الأمبراطور فيه
honest	أمين	someone doesn't lie	شخص لا يكذب

Study the following

1. The most important man in China was the emperor.
   - كان الأمبراطور أهم رجل في الصين.
2. He lived in a beautiful palace.
   - عاش في قصر جميل.
3. There will be a competition.
   - سوف تكون هناك مسابقة.
4. I will give a seed to each gardener.
   - سوف أعطي بذرة لكل بستاني.
5. Cheng was very good at growing things and looking after his garden.
   - كان تشن جيدًا في زراعة الأشياء والأهتمام بحديقته.
6. He put the seed in the sun and gave it water.
   - وضع البذرة في الشمس واعطاها المياه.
7. The seeds I gave everyone were dead.
   - البذور التي أعطيتها لكل شخص كان ميتة.
8. You will be the next emperor.
   - سوف تكون الامبراطور القادم.
9. Honesty is more important than winning.
   - الأمانة أهم من الفوز.

1 Read and listen. Where did Cheng live? اقرأ واستمع. أين عاش تشن؟

The Empty Pot: A Folktale from China!

استمع إلى النص:



Cheng lived long ago in China. The most important man in China was the **emperor**[1]. He lived in a beautiful **palace**[2]. One day the emperor said, "There will be a **competition**[3]. I will give a seed to each **gardener**[4]. The one who can grow the most beautiful plant from the seed will be the next emperor."

"Take the pot and the seed. Plant it. " says the emperor. "Make it grow into a beautiful plant. Then bring the plant back to me."

Cheng was very good at growing things and looking **after**[5] his garden. He put the seed in the sun and gave it water. But **nothing**[6] happened. Cheng tried for weeks but no plant grew. The other gardeners had plants that grew.

At the palace, all the gardeners have beautiful plants.

"Where is your plant?" the emperor asks Cheng.

"I worked very hard. I watered it every day," says Cheng. "But it didn't grow."

"Then you win!" says the emperor. "The seeds I gave **everyone**[7] were **dead**. The seeds cannot grow. Only you are good and **honest**[9]. So you will be **the next emperor**[10]!".

Arabic Meaning

١- أمبراطور
٢- قصر
٣- مسابقة
٤- بستاني
٥- الإعتناء بـ
٦- لا شيء
٧- كل شخص
٨- ميتة
٩- أمين
١٠- القادم

2 Circle the correct meaning: ضع دائرة حول المعنى الصحيح:

1. An emperor is someone who is like a ....
   - a king
   - b farmer
2. A palace is where an emperor ....
   - a travels
   - b lives
3. Someone who is honest ....
   - a does not lie
   - b lies
4. In a competition someone tries to ....
   - a win
   - b lose

3 Read again and answer T (True) or F (False):

اقرأ النص السابق مرة أخرى واجب بـ (صح) أم (خطأ):

		True	False
1	Cheng was good at growing things.		
2	Cheng didn't like being in his garden.		
3	The emperor gave all the gardeners a seed to plant.		
4	Cheng's seed grew into a big, beautiful flower.		
5	Cheng looked after the seed, and gave it sun and water.		
6	Cheng was sad and took the empty pot to the emperor.		
7	Cheng wasn't the next emperor as his seed didn't grow.		

4 What is the moral of this story? ما الدرس الأخلاقي للقصة؟

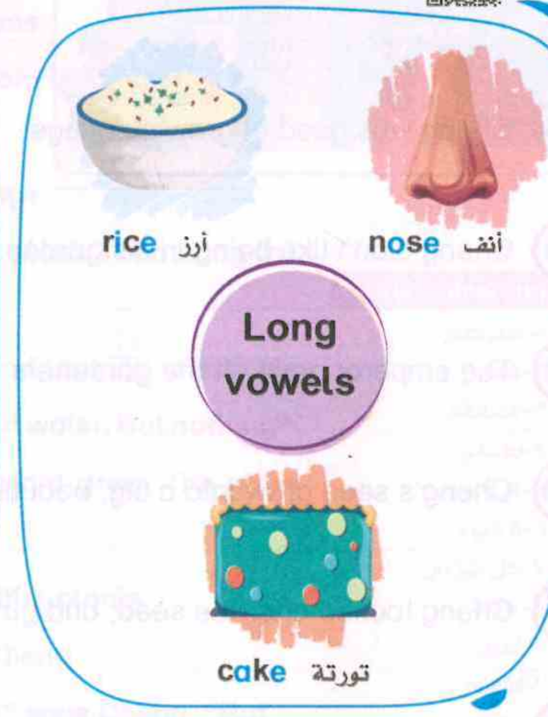
- a Winning is very important. الفوز مهم جدًا.
- b Honesty is more important than winning. الأمانة أهم من الفوز.
- c Everyone should plant a seed. يجب أن يزرع كل شخص بذرة.



- ندرس في هذا الدرس الاصوات المتحركة القصيرة والممتدة.
- الاصوات القصيرة غالبا تحتوى على حرف متحرك واحد (bag / pen / mix / mom / bus)
- الاصوات الممتدة تحتوى على صوتين متحركين (cake / feet / rice / nose / blue)

استمع إلى النص:





اصوات قصيرة	اصوات ممتدة
bag	cake
mom	nose
mix	rice

- ندرس أيضاً البادئة (re) التي تأتى أول الفعل بمعنى يعيد عمل.
Prefix (re) means again البادئة (re) تعنى مرة أخرى

redo	يعيد فعل/يجدد	repaint	يعيد دهان
reclean	يعيد تنظيف	remake	يعيد عمل

Help your child learn about short and long vowels. ساعد طفلك ان يتعلم عن الاصوات المتحركة القصيرة والممتدة.



1 Look at the pictures and complete the words:

انظر إلى الصور واكمل الكلمات:



2 Read and change the verbs with "re": اقرأ وغير الافعال باستخدام البادئة (re).

The prefix "re" means "again".

The seeds didn't grow. Cheng wanted to replant them.

➤ لاحظ (again) تعنى مرة آخرى ولاعادة كتابة الجمل نحذف again ونضع (re) قبل الفعل.

1. Ramez painted his house again. He repainted his house .
2. Nada cleaned her bike again. She recleaned her bike .
3. The chef made rice again.
   ....
4. Shaimaa did her homework again.
   ....



Comparing large digits / Ascending order
مقارنة الأعداد الكبيرة / الترتيب التصاعدي

- Bassem wants to be healthy, so he walks 178,880 meters a day.

يريد باسم أن يكون بصحة جيدة، لذلك هو يمشي ١٧٨,٨٨٠ متر كل يوم.

نتعلم اولاً العلامات الرياضية حيث : (=) تعنى يساوى/ (>) تعنى أصغر من/ (<) تعنى أكبر من.

- ندرس فى هذا الدرس مقارنة الاعداد الكبيرة كمايلى:

١. بشكل عام العدد الذى به ارقام أكثر هو العدد الاكبر.

100,000	53,978

نلاحظ هنا أن العدد (100,000) يتكون من (6) أرقام والعدد (53,978) يتكون من (5) أرقام إذا العدد الأكبر هو (100,000).

٢. إذا تساوى العددين نقارن أول رقم بالعدد الأول مع أول رقم بالعدد الآخر (مقارنة الرقم يكون من اليسار إلى اليمن).

512,345	612,345

هنا تساوى العددين فى عدد الأرقام. نبدأ المقارنة من أول رقم ونلاحظ أن 6 > 5 إذا 612,345 هو العدد الأكبر.

835,597	835,497

– عند مقارنة العددين نلاحظ تساوى أول ثلاثة أرقام (835) لكن 4 > 5 إذا العدد 835,597 هو الأكبر.

Ascending order الترتيب التصاعدى

هو ترتيب الاعداد من الصغير إلى الكبير كما تعلمنا فى الفقرة السابقة نحدد من هو العدد الصغير والكبير ثم نرتب من أصغر عدد إلى أكبر عدد. قارن الآتى:

87,909 - 87,092 - 87,990

87,092 < 87,909 < 87,990

Help your child learn about comparing large digits and ascending order.

ساعد طفلك ان يتعلم عن مقارنة الاعداد الكبيرة والترتيب التصاعدى.

1 Look and say: انظر وقل:

544,432	five hundred, forty-four thousand, and four hundred thirty-two
178,880	one hundred, seventy-eight thousand and eight hundred and eighty

2 Put the correct sign (>,< , or =): ضع العلامة الصحيحة (< ، > أو =):

1. 655,534 [<] 698,881
2. 10,000,000 [ ] ten million
3. 100,000,000 [ ] 99,999,999

3 Arrange these numbers in ascending order: رتب الأرقام ترتيب تصاعدى:

1. 87,909 - 87,092 - 87,990

----

2. 233,346 - 10,009 - 20,665

----

3. 20,000 – 20,310 – 19,311

Find out

The numerical digits we use today 1, 2 and 3 are based on the Hindu-Arabic numeral system. This system was developed over 1000 years ago. Can you find the smallest five-digit number?

إن الاعداد التى نستخدمها حاليا (1 , 2 ,3) مأخوذة من نظام العد الهندى العربى. تطور هذا النظام عبر ١٠٠٠ عام مضت. هل تستطيع معرفة اصغر عدد يتكون من خمسة ارقام؟ ......

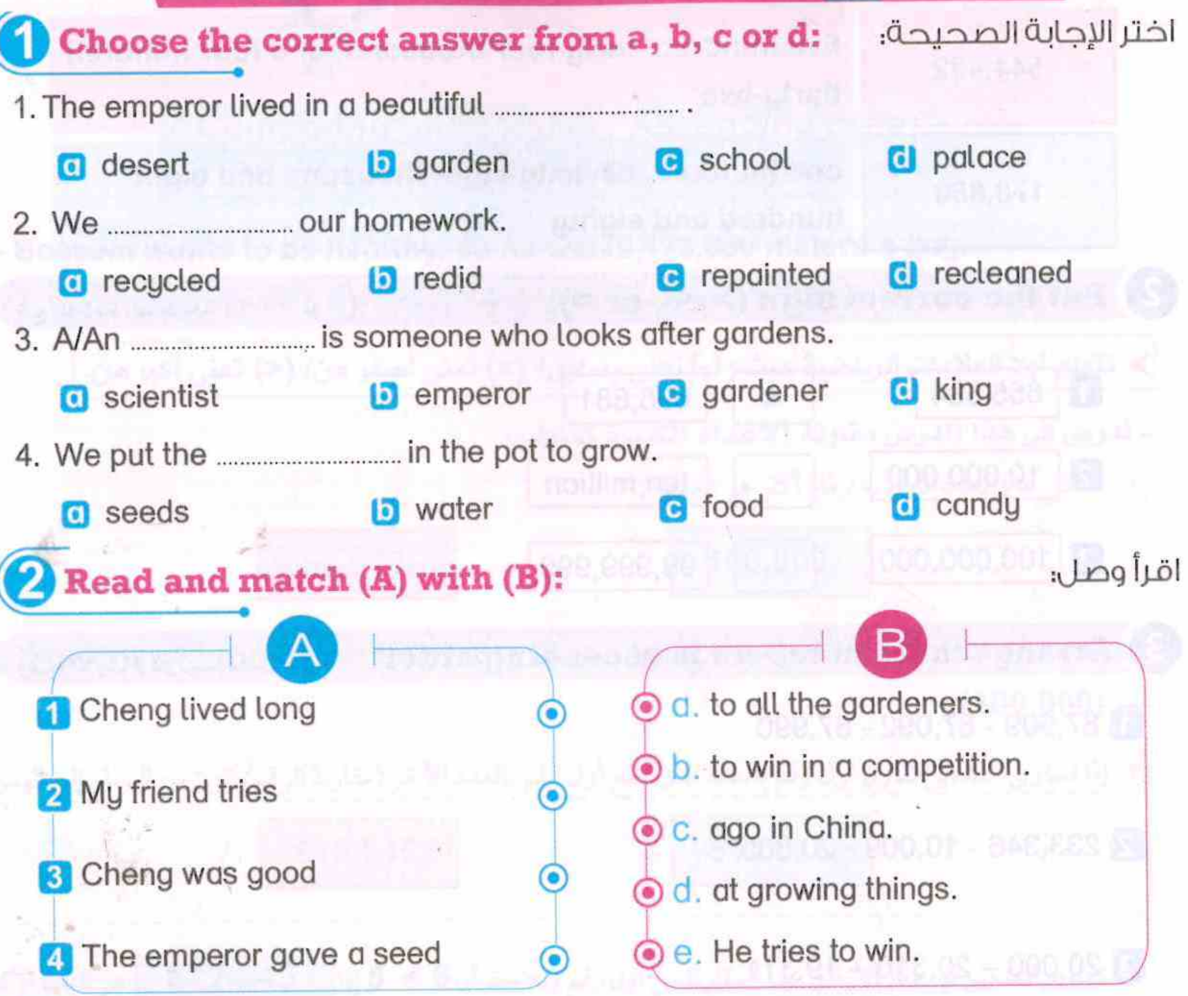


Activities

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. The emperor lived in a beautiful ....
   a desert b garden c school d palace
2. We .... our homework.
   a recycled b redid c repainted d recleaned
3. A/An .... is someone who looks after gardens.
   a scientist b emperor c gardener d king
4. We put the .... in the pot to grow.
   a seeds b water c food d candy

2 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل:



A	B
1 Cheng lived long	a. to all the gardeners.
2 My friend tries	b. to win in a competition.
3 Cheng was good	c. ago in China.
4 The emperor gave a seed	d. at growing things.
	e. He tries to win.

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. was - Cheng - honest - and - good.
   ....
2. a - be - There - competition - will.
   ....
3. watered - I - every - the plants - day.
   ....
4. more - winning - Honesty - than - is - important.
   ....

4 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للاتى:

1. where's your plant ....
2. all the seeds cannot grow ....

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة

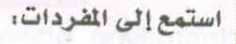


Lesson 4 ★ Writing



Vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:





wheat قمح

Damietta governorate محافظة دمياط


nutrients عناصر غذائية


rice أرز


tomato ثمرة طماطم


potato ثمرة بطاطس


guava ثمرة جوافة


lemons ليمون


grapes عنب


fisherman صياد


farmer فلاح


sheep خروف

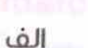

cow بقرة

goat معزة

1,000 thousand الف

1,000,000 million مليون

Domiati cheese جبنة دمياط



Other words كلمات أخرى




land	الأرض	part	جزء
rich	غني	crops	محاصيل
catch (fish)	يصطاد سمك	less than	أقل من
famous	مشهور		

Help your child learn about Damietta governorate. ساعد طفلك ان يتعلم عن محافظة دمياط.

Study the following

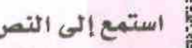
1. The land in Damietta governorate is rich in nutrients.
- الأرض فى محافظة دمياط غنية بالعناصر الغذائية.

2. Fishermen catch thousands of fish in the sea.
- يصطاد الصيادون الآف الاسماك من البحر.

3. Cows, goats and sheep live in Damietta governorate, too.
- يعيش البقر والماعز والخراف فى محافظة دمياط ايضًا.

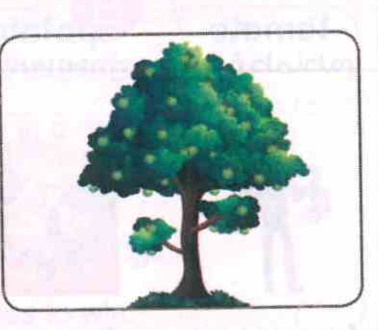
4. Domiati cheese is very famous.
- الجبنة الدمياطى مشهورة جدًا.

5. Life is good in Damietta.
- الحياة رائعة فى دمياط.



Food from Damietta استمع إلى النص:

The land in Damietta governorate is rich in nutrients. The farmers can grow rice, tomatoes, potatoes, wheat, lemons, grapes, and guavas.
Fishermen catch thousands of fish in the sea. Cows, goats and sheep live in Damietta governorate, too. Domiati cheese is very famous.
About one and a half million people live in this part of Egypt. Life is good in Damietta!



1 Read again and answer T (True) or F (False):

اقرأ النص السابق مرة أخرى واجب بـ (صح) أم (خطأ):

	True	False
1. Damietta has lots of food and animals.		
2. The farmers grow a lot of fruit and vegetables.		
3. The land in Damietta is not good for crops.		
4. There aren't many lemons and grapes in Damietta.		
5. Less than two million people live in Damietta.		

2 Read the text and join the sentence halves:

اقرأ النص واربط انصاف الجمل بنهاياتها:

A
1. Damietta is famous
2. The animals you see
3. The farmers grow
4. About 1.5 million Egyptians

B
a. live in Damietta governorate.
b. tomatoes, potatoes, wheat, lemons, and guavas.
c. for Domiati cheese.
d. in Damietta are goats, cows and sheep.



Activities

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

famous - potatoes - thousands - live

Damietta is a good place to live in. Farmers can grow many things there. They are rice, tomatoes and ❶ .... Fishermen catch ❷ .... of fish. You can eat Domiati cheese. It's very ❸ ....

2 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل:

A
1. Life is
2. Fishermen catch thousands
3. Domiati cheese is very
4. One and a half million

B
a. people live in Damietta.
b. famous.
c. good in Damietta.
d. of fish.
e. nutrients

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:
اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. famous - What's - for - Damietta?

---

2. rich - The - in - land - is - nutrients.

---

3. farmers - in - What - produce - do - Damietta?

---

4 Punctuate the following:
ضع علامات الترقيم للاتى:

you can see animals in Damietta

---

5 Write an email of TWENTY FOUR (24) words using the following guiding elements:
اكتب إيميل من (٢٤) كلمة عن:

مجاب عنه آخر الوحدة

Damietta governorate

grow - cheese

- To your friend Bahaa to tell him about Damietta governorate. Your name is Youssef and your email address is youssef@gmail.com. and your friend's email address is bahaa@yahoo.com

New Message

To ________________ Cc Bcc

From ________________

Subject ________________

Dear ________,

____

____

____

____

Yours,

____



Review

Food and drink الطعام والشراب

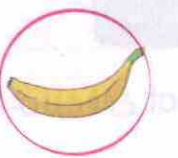








tomato	rice	chicken	potato	onion	mango
ثمرة طماطم	أرز	دجاجة / لحم دجاج	ثمرة بطاطس	بصلة	ثمرة مانجو

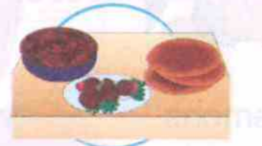






banana	grapes	watermelon	sugarcane	milk
موزة	عنب	بطيخة	قصب السكر	لبن

Meals الوجبات





breakfast	lunch	dinner
الافطار	الغداء	العشاء

Healthy صحي







play football	play basektball	drink water	exercise	eat vegetables
يلعب كرة القدم	يلعب كرة السلة	يشرب مياه	يتمرن	يأكل خضراوات

Unhealthy غير صحي





drink cola	eat candy	play video games
يشرب كولا	يأكل حلوى	يلعب ألعاب الفيديو

Help your child revise Unit 1. ساعد طفلك ان يراجع الوحدة الاولى.

A folktale from China أسطورة خرافية من الصين


emperor امبراطور


palace قصر


king ملك


gardener بستاني


China الصين


honest أمين


competition مسابقة


seeds بذور


empty pot أصيص زرع فارغ

Writing


Damietta governorate محافظة دمياط


guava جوافة


lemons ليمون


wheat قمح


fisherman صياد


farmer فلاح


sheep خروف


cow بقرة

goat معزة

Grammar قواعد لغوية

- نستخدم (and) بمعنى (و) للربط بين جملتين أو اسمين أو صفتين لهما نفس الفكرة أى انها تضيف للمعنى:

-I like fruit and vegetables.

- و نستخدم (but) بمعنى (لكن) للربط بين جملتين أو صفتين بينهما تناقض أو بين جملة مثبتة وأخرى منفية:

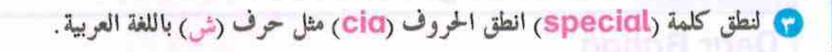
-I don't eat candy, but I like fruit.

ملاحظات على نطق بعض الكلمات

– نقدم فى هذه الفقرة ارشادات تقرب بقدر الإمكان نطق الكلمات بشكل صحيح والتركيز على الأخطاء الشائعة فى النطق

ويُفضّل سماع الكلمات من خاصية (QR code) الموجودة بالكتاب.

1. لنطق كلمة (rice) انطق الحرف (c) مثل حرف (s) لأنه جاء بعده حرف (e).



2. لنطق كلمة (onion) بشكل صحيح انطق الحرف (o) الأول مثل نطق حرف (u) فى كلمة (bus) وانطق حرف (i) مثل نطق حرف (y) فى كلمة (yes) وحرف (o) الثانى مثل نطق حرف (o) فى كلمة second.

3. لنطق كلمة (special) انطق الحروف (cia) مثل حرف (ش) باللغة العربية.

4. لنطق كلمة (delicious) انطق الحروف (cious) مثل حرف (ش) باللغة العربية.

5. لنطق كلمة (Egyptian) انطق الحروف (tian) مثل حرف (شن) باللغة العربية.





مهارات الكتابة

Write a paragraph / an email of TWENTY FOUR (24) words.

Answers to Paragraphs / Emails

Lesson 1

Healthy food

1. I like healthy food. I always eat vegetables and fruit. Mom cooks healthy meals. She cooks chicken and rice for lunch. We eat bananas and grapes for dessert.

Lesson 4

Damietta governorate

2.

New Message

To bahaa@yahoo.com **Cc** **Bcc**

From youssef@gmail.com

Subject Damietta governorate

Dear Bahaa,

How are you? I'd like to tell you about my city, Damietta. I live in Damietta with my family. Farmers grow rice, tomatoes and potatoes. Fishermen catch thousands of fish in the sea. Domiati cheese is famous. Life is good in Damietta.

See you soon.

Yours,

Youssef

Activity - Unit 1

Your favorite meal

3. My favorite meal is lunch. My mother cooks chicken and rice. I eat fruit like watermelon, bananas and grapes, too. They are healthy food.

Al-Azhar Exercises  الأسئلة الخاصة بالأزهر الشريف

A- Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer: استمع وأختر:



1. Dad is a .... (teacher - doctor - scientist)
2. The desert is very .... (warm - hot - cold)

B- Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialog: أقرأ وأكمل:

vegetables - do - healthy

A : Do you like -- food?

B : Yes, I -- .

A : What healthy food do you like?

B : Fruit and -- .

C- Reading Comprehension

3 Read and choose the correct answer: أقرأ واختر:

My father is a good farmer. He has a big farm. He grows tomatoes, potatoes, bananas, watermelons and wheat. He keeps a cow, a horse and a donkey. He raises chickens to get eggs.

Choose the correct answer:

1. My father is a .... (farmer - doctor - fisherman)
2. My father's farm is .... (big - small - old)
3. My father .... wheat. (keeps - feeds - grows)
4. My father keeps a .... (cat - cow - dog)
5. My father raises .... (chickens - birds - ducks)

D- Vocabulary and Structures

4 Choose the right answer from a, b, or c: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة

1. He plays football .... tennis.

   a but b so c and

2. Farmers .... chickens to get eggs and meat.

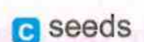
   a eat b raise c grow

3. Nabil washes the rice, ... he can't cook it.

   a for b but c so

4. We need .... to grow plants.

   a apples b sugar c seeds

5. Domiati cheese is very ....

   a tall b wrong c famous

E- Writing

5 Rearrange the words to make correct sentences: اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة

1. her - Hoda - repainted - bike.

   ----

2. dead - The - were - seeds.

   ----

3. grow - in - We - rice - Egypt.

   ----

4. many - You - Egypt - can - in - crops - see.

   ----

6 Write a paragraph of Four (4) sentences about: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من أربع جمل عن:

Unhealthy food






Activity ON UNIT 1

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

		True	False
1	I read the folktale from India.		
2	Cheng was an honest gardener.		
3	The emperor gave plants to Cheng.		
4	Cheng was the first emperor.		

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة

1. Farmers .... rice in Egypt.

   a grow b play c visit d draw

2. We try to .... in the competition.

   a lose b lie c win d grow

3. I don't like candy, ... I like fruit.

   a and b but c to d too

4. It's very .... in the desert.

   a hot b tall c high d slow

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار

famous - catch - life - grow

Alexandria is a beautiful city ❶ .... is good there. The sea in alexandria is ❷ .... Fishermen come to the sea to ❸ .... thousands of fish then, they sell the fish at the market.

4 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل

A	B
1 Do you think	a. grow rice in Egypt.
2 I want to play football.	b. from our country?
3 Which food comes	c. but my leg hurts.
4 Farmers	d. you are healthy?
	e. special food.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

5 Read the following and answer the questions: اقرأ الآتى ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

My name is Ahmed Samy. I like chicken and mangoes. I like drinking sugarcane juice. My brother Magdy likes rice and potatoes. **We** go to school by bus. We do our homework at seven o'clock. Then, we play with my cousin Adham at eight o'clock, We have dinner at 9 o'clock in the evening.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined word "**We**" refers to ....

a Ahmed and Samy   b Ahmed and Magdy
c Ahmed and Adel   d Ahmed and Adham

2. They have dinner at .... o'clock.

a eight   b nine   c seven   d ten

B. Answer the following questions:

3. How do Ahmed and Magdy go to school?

---

4. Who likes chicken and mangoes?

---

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملا صحيحة:

1. redid - We - homework - our. ....
2. grow - Farmers - rice - tomatoes - and. ....
3. healthy - do - What - you - do - things? ....

7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للاتى:

we raise chickens in Egypt

---

8 Write a paragraph of TWENTY FOUR (24) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٢٤) كلمة عن:

Your favorite meal

مجاب عنه آخر الوحدة

1- What's your favorite meal?
2- When do you eat it?

Theme 1

I discover myself

Unit 2

Desert Animals

حيوانات صحراوية

لنطق الكلمات الجديدة التي أعلاها علامة نجمة* أنظر آخر الوحدة

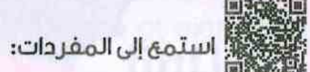
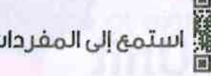




Objectives of the Unit أهداف الوحدة

1. Listen, read, research, and write about desert animals.
- يستمع الطالب ويقرأ ويقوم بعمل بحث ويكتب عن الحيوانات الصحراوية.
2. Practice making comparisons. - يتدرب الطالب على عمل مقارنات.
3. Listen to a short story. - يستمع الطالب إلى قصة قصيرة.
4. Learn about the difference between the /p/ and /b/ sounds.
- يتعلم الطالب عن الفرق بين صوتى /p/ and /b/.
5. Describe two animals. - يصف الطالب أثنين من الحيوانات.
6. Write a fact file. - يكتب الطالب ملف حقائق.
7. Research and make a poster. - يقوم الطالب بعمل بحث وبوستر.



Lesson 1 Animals in Egypt

استمع إلى المفردات:



Key vocabulary




fennec fox ثعلب الصحراء



camel جمل



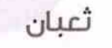
spider عنكبوت



eagle نسر / طائر العقاب



pelican* بجعة

snake ثعبان



crocodile تمساح



lizard سحلية



insect حشرة

Other words كلمات أخرى



What about.....?	ماذا عن.........؟
few	قليل
true	صحيح / حقيقي
yes / yeah	نعم
do a very important job	يقوم بعمل هام جدا
OK	حسنًا

Help your child learn about desert animals. ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن الحيوانات الصحراوية.



Adjectives صفات

huge	ضخم
ugly	قبيح
scary	مخيف / مرعب
scarier	مخيف أكثر
cute	جميل
dangerous	خطير
helpful	مفيد
important	هام

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
live	يعيش	lived
control	يتحكم / يقيد عدد	controlled

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
think	يعتقد	thought
do	يفعل	did

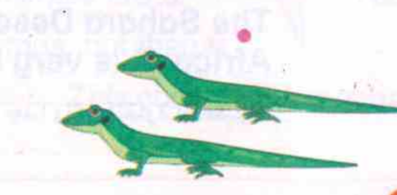
Study the following

1. The crocodile is huge. — التمساح ضخم.
2. I think crocodiles are scary. — أعتقد أن التماسيح مخيفة.
3. I think the spider is scarier. — اعتقد أن العنكبوت مخيف أكثر.
4. The spiders are very helpful. They eat insects. Farmers like spiders. — العناكب مفيدة جدًا. إنها تأكل الحشرات ويحبها الفلاحون.
5. What about the snake and the crocodile? — ماذا عن الثعبان والتمساح؟
6. Animals are all important. — الحيوانات كلها مهمة.
7. Animals do a very important job. — الحيوانات تقوم بوظيفة هامة جدًا.
8. Which animals are dangerous? — أي من الحيوانات خطيرة؟

1 Match the words the pictures: صل الكلمات بالصور:

birds lizards insects





2 Listen and read: استمع واقرأ:

استمع إلى النص:

Mom : Look at all these animals that live in our country.
Sara : Look at the crocodile, it's huge!
Tarek : Huge and scary!
Sara : I think the spider is scarier.
Mom : Yeah, but spiders are very helpful. They eat insects. Farmers like spiders.
Sara : OK, what about the snake and the crocodile? They're dangerous, aren't they?
Mom : Yes, that's true, but they do a very important job. They eat insects, birds and lizards. This controls the number of these small animals. We sometimes think some animals are scary or ugly, but they are all important.

3 Look and say. Then write : انظر وقل ثم اكتب:

fennec fox - crocodile - snake - spider - camel

1 
2 
3 

....

4 
5 

....

4 Listen again and answer: استمع للنص السابق مرة أخرى وأجب:

Which animals do Mom, Tarek and Sara not talk about? ....

Did you know? هل تعلم؟

The Sahara Desert covers large parts of ten countries in Africa. It is very big, but Antarctica is bigger!

تغطى الصحراء الكبرى أجزاء كبيرة من ١٠ دول فى أفريقيا، إنها كبيرة جدًا ولكن القارة القطبية الجنوبية أكبر.



Activities

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

	True	False
1 Crocodiles are scary animals.		
2 Crocodiles are cute animals.		
3 Crocodiles eat meat and fish.		
4 Crocodiles control the number of small animals.		

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Spiders eat ....
   a birds b insects c fish d snakes
2. Farmers like spiders because they are ....
   a helpful b scary c huge d high
3. .... animals are cute?
   a Where b Which c How d When
4. Crocodiles are dangerous, ... they are important.
   a and b to c but d too

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

lizards - do - scary - fisherman

(البحيرة – النوبارية ٢٠٢٣)

There are a lot of animals in our country. Some animals are 1 ...., but they are important. Snakes and crocodiles are dangerous, but they 2 .... a very important job. They eat insects and 3 .... This controls the number of these small animals.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.



4 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 The eagle and pelican	a. huge.
2 Crocodiles are	b. and crocodiles eat?
3 Animals	c. are important.
4 Farmers like	d. spiders.
	e. are birds.

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. eat – Spiders – insects. (المنيا- العدوة ٢٠٢٣)

----

2. animals – Which – dangerous – are?

----

3. think – crocodiles – scary – I – are.

----

4. about – What – snakes – crocodiles - and? (البحيرة – دمنهور ٢٠٢٣)

----

6 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للاتي:

i think spiders are very helpful (أسيوط – الغنايم ٢٠٢٣)

----

7 Write a paragraph of TWENTY FOUR (24) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٢٤) كلمة عن:



Animals in our country

helpful - dangerous

Lesson 2 ★ Amazing desert animals

Vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



Adjectives الصفات



Long Adjectives صفات طويلة	
amazing	مدهش
delicious	لذيذ
beautiful	جميل
careful	حريص
perfect	رائع / ممتاز - مناسب جدا
dangerous	خطير

Short Adjectives صفات قصيرة	
noisy	مزعج
strong	قوى
angry	غاضب
old	كبير السن
small	صغير
thin	رفيع
nice	جميل
long	طويل
large	كبير
fast	سريع
slow	بطئ

Other words كلمات أخرى

special way طريقة خاصة	clothes ملابس
fresh water ماء عذب	kph كيلو متر / ساعة

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ
cross يعبر	crossed
carry يحمل	carried

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ
have / has يملك	had
make يعمل	made

Study the following

1. Camels are beautiful, strong animals.
- الجمال حيوانات جميلة وقوية.
2. They help us to carry things and people to cross the desert.
- إنها تساعدنا فى حمل الأشياء والناس عند عبور الصحراء.
3. Their milk is delicious.
- لبنها لذيذ.
4. We can use their fur to make clothes.
- يمكن استخدام فروها لعمل ملابس.
5. Camels are perfect for the desert.
- الجمال ملائمة جدًا للعيش فى الصحراء.
6. Camels have large, flat feet so they can walk on the sand.
- الجمال لديها اقدام كبيرة ومسطحة تمكنها من السير على الرمال.
7. Camels can live without water for a long time.
- يمكن أن تعيش الجمال بدون ماء لفترة طويلة.
8. Camels are very noisy and they can get angry.
- الجمال مزعجة جدًا ويمكن أن تغضب.
9. Horses have large beautiful eyes.
- الخيول لديها عيون كبيرة وجميلة.
10. Horses eat grass and drink fresh water.
- الخيول تأكل الحشائش وتشرب الماء العذب.
11. Horses can live in the desert, but they need people to look after them.
- يمكن أن تعيش الخيول فى الصحراء ولكن تحتاج أن يعتنى بها الناس.

Grammar قواعد لغوية

Comparative adjectives مقارنة الصفات

➤ نستخدم الصفات لوصف الأسماء.
- The mouse is small.

مقارنة شيئين

➤ يمكن أيضاً أن نستخدم الصفات للمقارنة بين شخصين أو شيئين أو حيوانين كالآتى:

1 الصفات القصيرة

➤ أولاً: يجب أن تعلم أن الصفات تنقسم إلى صفات طويلة وصفات قصيرة.

➤ مع الصفات القصيرة نضيف (er) آخر الصفة عند المقارنة:

اسم + than + er + صفة قصيرة + اسم

- A mouse is smaller than an elephant.

لاحظ

➤ يمكن حذف (than) و حذف آخر اسم إذا تم ذكر الاسم فى جملة سابقة كالآتى:
- A rabbit is small. I think the mouse is smaller. ~~(than the rabbit)~~

لاحظ

- عند إضافة (er) للصفة:

➤ إذا انتهت الصفة بحرف y + حرف ساكن نحذف حرف (y) ونضيف (ier):

scary ⟶ scarier heavy ⟶ heavier

➤ إذا انتهت الصفة بحرف متحرك + حرف ساكن نضاعف الحرف الساكن:

big ⟶ bigger thin ⟶ thinner

➤ إذا انتهت الصفة بحرف (e) نضيف (r) فقط:

nice ⟶ nicer

2 الصفات الطويلة

➤ نضيف قبل الصفة الطويلة less / more:

beautiful ⟶ less / more beautiful

➤ أقل من less + صفة طويلة + than

➤ أكثر من more + صفة طويلة + than

اسم + than + صفة طويلة + more / less + اسم

- Eagles are more beautiful than insects.
- Crocodiles are more dangerous than fish.
- Camels are more perfect for the desert than horses.

لاحظ

➤ لا تستخدم less / more مع الصفات القصيرة ولا تستخدم (er) مع الصفات الطويلة.

Help your child learn about comparisons. ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم المقارنة.

1 Read about camels and check your answers. What is surprising about camels? اقرأ عن الجمال وتأكد من إجابتك. ما الشئ المدهش عن الجمال؟

Camels are amazing! They're beautiful, strong animals. They help us to carry things and people to cross the desert. Their milk is delicious. We can use their fur to make clothes!

Camels are perfect for the desert. Here's why:




1 Camels have large, flat feet so they can walk on the sand.



2 Camels can live without water for a long time.



3 Camels have special ways to close their noses and eyes to stop the sand from coming in.

- But be careful! Camels are very noisy and they can get angry.

2 Look at the fact file and read the differences between horses and camels. انظر إلى ملف الحقائق واقرأ الفرق بين الخيول والجمال.

	Horse	Camel
How tall is it?	1.4 - 1.8 cm	1.8 - 2.0 m
How heavy is it?	380 - 550 kg	400 - 650 kg
How fast is it?	88 kph	65 kph
How long does it live?	25 - 30 years	40 years



Horses have large, beautiful eyes.



Horses eat grass and drink fresh water. Horses can live in the desert, but they need people to look after them.

Help your child read facts about camels and horses ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ حقائق عن الجمال والخيول.

3 Read and answer (True) or (False): اقرأ واجب بـ (صح) أو (خطأ):

	True	False
1 Horses are slower than camels.		
2 Camels are taller than horses.		
3 Horses are heavier than camels.		
4 Camels live longer than horses.		

4 Look and complete the table : انظر وأكمل الجدول:

tall	taller
....	heavier
fast	....
....	bigger
beautiful	more ....
delicious	.... delicious
....	shorter

5 Write sentences to compare these animals: اكتب جمل للمقارنة بين الحيوانات:

1. (snake / fox / dangerous)

A snake is more dangerous than a fox.

2. (elephant / hippo / big) ________________

3. (giraffe / horse / tall) ________________

4. (crocodile / fish / dangerous) ________________

5. (camel / fennec fox / small) ________________

6. (ice cream / butter / delicious) ________________



Activities

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Horses are .... than camels.

a fast   b fastest   c faster   d as fast

2. The horse is shorter .... the camel.

a than   b the   c that   d then

3. Camels are .... than horses.

a more tall   b tall   c taller   d tallest

4. Ice cream is .... than butter.

a delicious   b more delicious

c the delicious   d most delicious

5. Camels are .... for the desert than horses.

a perfecter   b perfect

c more perfect   d as perfect

6. The snake is .... dangerous than the fox.

a more   b most   c many   d least

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

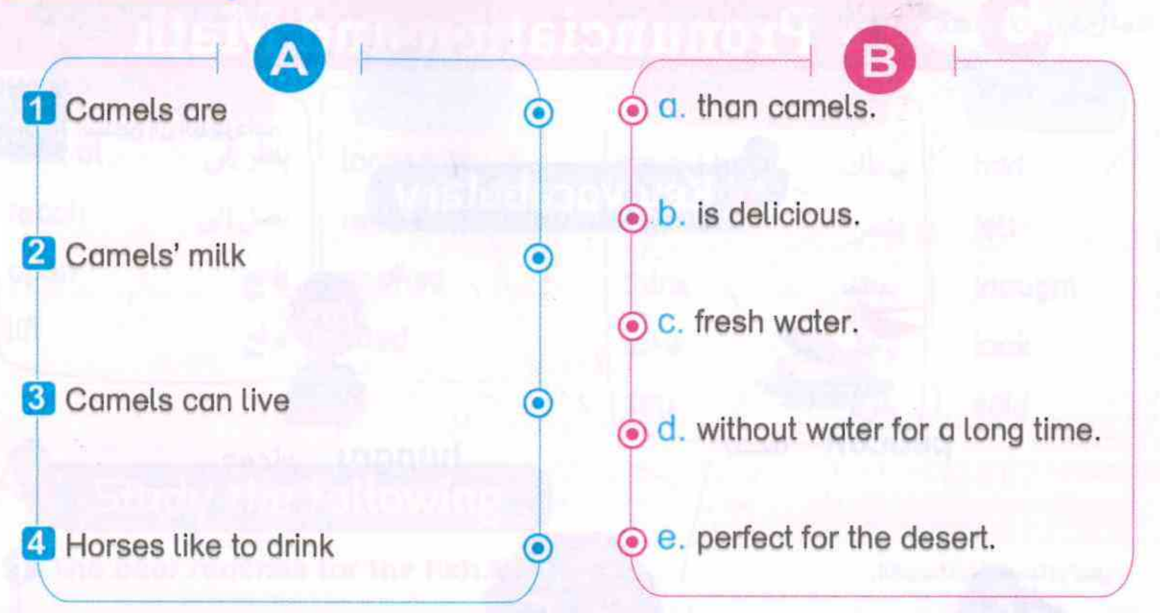
fresh - teeth - grass - large

I like riding horses. They are my favorite animals. They have ❶ .... beautiful eyes. They like to eat ❷ .... and drink ❸ .... water. They can carry people and other things.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



3 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل:



A	B
1 Camels are	a. than camels.
2 Camels' milk	b. is delicious.
	c. fresh water.
3 Camels can live	d. without water for a long time.
4 Horses like to drink	e. perfect for the desert.

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. have – feet – **Camels** – large - ,flat.

- -

2. taller – **A giraffe** – is – than – a horse.

- -

3. to make – can – fur – use – **We** – their – clothes.

- -

4. **A mouse** – is – than – an – smaller – elephant.

- -

5 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

camels are perfect for the desert

- -



Lesson 3

★ The pelican and the bear
★ Pronunciation and Math



استمع إلى المفردات:



Key vocabulary



pelican بجعة



hungry جوعان



paw* كف الحيوان



bear* دب



claw* مخلب الحيوان



juicy fish سمكة عصيرية (طرية)



beak منقار

angry غضبان



Other words كلمات أخرى

Excuse me!	اعذرني!	interesting	شيق
fun	متعة	boring	ممل
surprised	مندهش	both	كلاهم
scared	خائف	sadly	بحزن

Help your child learn new words. ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم كلمات جديدة.

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
look at	ينظر إلى	looked at
reach	يصل إلى	reached
open	يفتح	opened
lift	يرفع	lifted

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
have / has	يمتلك	had
feel	يشعر	felt
think	يعتقد	thought
take	يأخذ	took
say	يقول	said

Study the following

1. The bear reaches for the fish. - يصل الدب إلى السمكة.
2. It is ready to take the fish out of the water. - إنه جاهز ليأخذ السمكة من الماء.
3. The bear is surprised and angry. - الدب مندهش وغضبان.
4. The pelican looks scared. - البجعة تبدو خائفة.
5. The bear is stronger than the pelican. - الدب أقوى من البجعة؟
6. How do you feel, pelican? - كيف تشعرى أيتها البجعة.
7. But you are hungrier than me. - لكن انت جائعة أكثر منى.
8. You are kinder than all the other bears. - انت عطوف أكثر من كل الدببة الأخرى.
9. Which animal is hungrier? - أى حيوان أكثر جوعًا؟

1 Look at the pictures and say: انظر إلى الصور وقل:

Describe the bear. صف الدب

Describe the pelican. صف البجعة



/p/ pelican



/b/ bear

2 Read and listen. Where is the fish at the end of the story:

اقرأ واستمع. أين السمكة فى نهاية القصة؟

The Pelican and the Bear



استمع إلى النص:

A pelican and a bear are in the river. They are very hungry. They are both looking at a big, juicy fish.

The bear reaches for the fish. It lifts its paw.

The pelican opens its beak. It is ready to take the fish out of the water. The bear sees the pelican. The pelican sees the bear.

paw

claw

"Excuse me," the pelican says, "that's my fish."

The bear is surprised and angry. "Pelican, look at my claws. Now look at my teeth. That's my fish."

The pelican looks scared. "I'm sorry, Bear," it says sadly.



The bear is stronger than the pelican. The bear looks at the pelican.

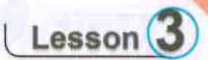
"How do you feel, pelican?" he asks. "I feel hungry," says Pelican. "I'm bigger and stronger than you," says Bear. "But I think you are hungrier than me. You can have the fish. "Thank you, Bear!" says Pelican. "You are kinder than all the other bears!"

3 Work with a partner. Ask and answer:

اعمل مع زميلك واسأل واجب:

1. Which animal reaches for the fish first? — ١- ما الحيوان الذى وصل للسمكة أولاً؟
2. Which animal is angry? — ٢- ما الحيوان الغاضب؟
3. Which animal is hungrier? — ٣- أى حيوان أكثر غضبًا؟
4. How do you think the bear feels at the end of the story? — ٤- كيف تعتقد ما شعربه الدب فى آخر القصة؟

Help your child read the story and answer the questions. ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ القصة ويجيب عن الأسئلة.

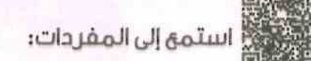




★ **Listen and say:** استمع وقل

/p/ & /b/

ندرس فى هذا الدرس نطق حرفى (/b/) و (/p/) والفرق بينهما حيث فى حرف (/p/) نضغط على الشفتين بقوة ويندفع الهواء من الفم عند نطق الحرف ولكن فى حرف (/b/) لا نضغط على الشفتين مع عدم اندفاع هواء من الفم حيث يشبه حرف (ب) فى اللغة العربية :







Help your child know the difference between the /b/ and /p/ sounds.

ساعد طفلك أن يعرف الفرق بين الصوتين /b/ و /p/.

Math

Fractions الكسور

- الكسر يتكون من جزئين الجزء العلوي يسمى البسط والجزء السفلي يسمى المقام ويوضع بينهما شرطة الكسر:

numerator البسط → $\frac{1}{2}$ ← denominator المقام

- يمكن أن نستخدم الكسور للتعبير عن عدد صحيح وغير صحيح فمثلاً $\frac{4}{2}$ هو كسر يمثل الرقم (2) وهو عدد صحيح و $\frac{1}{2}$ يمثل (0.5) وهو عدد غير صحيح.

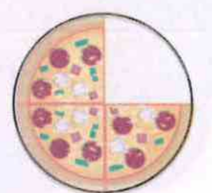
ولاحظ التالي:



هنا البيتزا غير مقسمة لذلك فإن قيمتها بالكسور = $\frac{1}{1}$



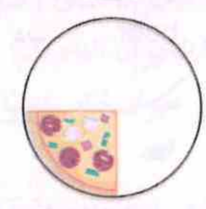
هنا البيتزا مقسمة إلى أربع أجزاء $\frac{4}{4} = 1$



هنا أخذنا جزء وتبقى ثلاثة أجزاء $\frac{4-1}{4} = \frac{3}{4}$



هنا أخذنا جزئين وتبقى جزئين $\frac{4-2}{4} = \frac{2}{4} = \frac{1}{2}$

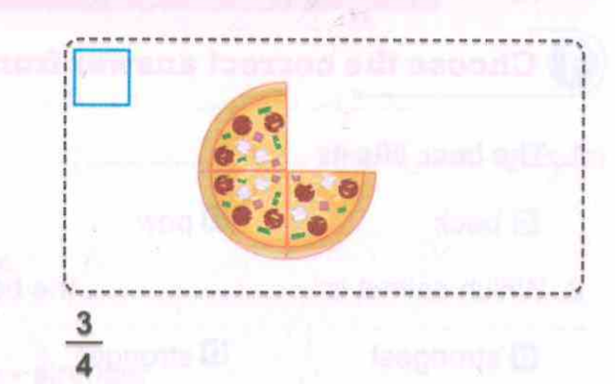


هنا أخذنا ثلاثة أجزاء وتبقى جزء $\frac{4-3}{4} = \frac{1}{4}$

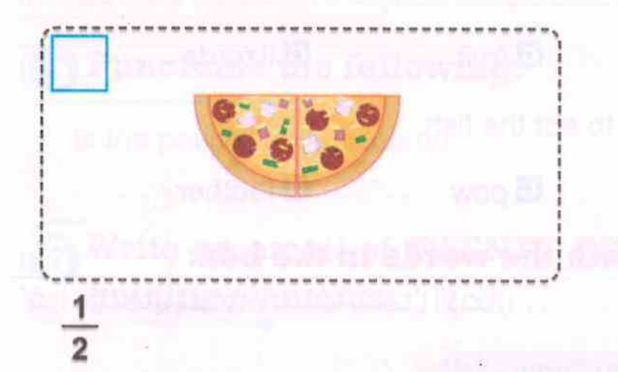
Help your child learn about fractions. ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن الكسور.

1 Look and put in descending order: انظر ورتب تنازلي (من الكبير للصغير)

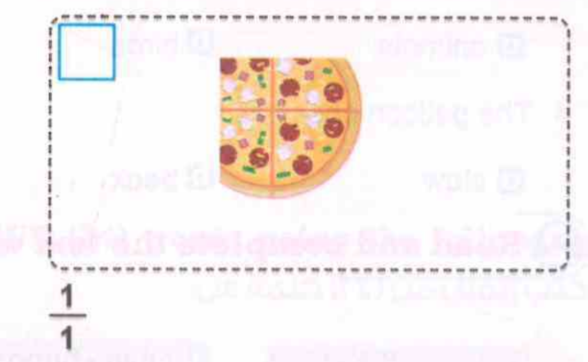
1 — $\frac{1}{4}$



$\frac{3}{4}$



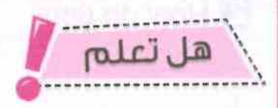
$\frac{1}{2}$



$\frac{1}{1}$

Did you know?

We use fractions in everyday life. For example, here's a simple milkshake recipe: $\frac{1}{2}$ a glass of milk, $\frac{1}{4}$ cup of banana, $\frac{1}{4}$ cup of vanilla ice cream.



➤ نستخدم الكسور فى حياتنا اليومية. فعلى سبيل المثال هذه وصفة بسيطة لعمل مخفوق اللبن «ميلك شيك»: $\frac{1}{2}$ كوب لبن، $\frac{1}{4}$ كوب موز، $\frac{1}{4}$ كوب آيس كريم بالفانيليا.

Activities



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. The bear lifts its ....
   a beak b paw c feather d stomach
2. Which animal is ...., the bear or the pelican?
   a strongest b stronger c tallest d the tallest
3. A pear is a kind of ....
   a animals b birds c fruit d lizards
4. The pelican opens its .... to eat the fish.
   a claw b beak c paw d feather

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

gave - hungry - saw - felt

One day, a pelican saw a big fish in the river. He wanted to eat it. But the pelican ❶ .... a bear. The bear was ❷ .... and wanted to eat the fish, too. The bear was kind. He ❸ .... the fish to the pelican.

3 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 The bear	a. a big beak.
2 How do you	b. has claws.
3 The pelican has	c. is angry?
4 Which animal	d. feel, pelican?
	e. very surprised and angry.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. pelican – The – scared - looks.
   ----
2. animal – is – Which – hungrier? (الاسكندرية - العجمي ٢٠٢٣)
   ----
3. bear – reaches The – fish – for – the.
   ----
4. is – than – the – The bear – pelican - stronger.
   ----

5 Punctuate the following:

is the pelican really scared

----

6 Write an email of TWENTY FOUR (24) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب إيميل من (٢٤) كلمة عن:

مجاب عنه آخر الوحدة

The pelican and the bear

hungry - fish

To your friend Amr to tell him about the story you read yesterday. Your email address is hani@yahoo.com. Your friend's email address is amr@gmail.com

New Message

To -- Cc Bcc

From --

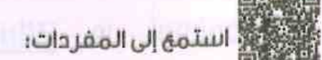
Subject --

Dear ----------,

Yours,

Lessons 4&5 ★ Animal fact file









rhim gazelle* غزال الريم

Sahara Desert الصحراء الكبرى

grass عشب / حشائش

leaves أوراق الشجر



plants نباتات





yellow-white coat صوف أصفر وأبيض

fennec fox ثعلب الصحراء



dolphin دولفين



mice فئران



horns قرون

Other words كلمات أخرى

North Africa	شمال إفريقيا
centimeters	سنتيمترات
kilogram	كيلو جرام
during	أثناء
heat	حرارة

foxes	ثعالب
around	حول
really	بالفعل
thick fur	فرو سميك
warm	دافئ

Question words كلمات الاستفهام



Where.......?	أين.....؟
How heavy.....?	كم وزن.....؟
Why.....?	لماذا.....؟
What..........?	ما / ماذا.....؟

What colors....?	ما لون.....؟
How tall.....?	كم طول رأسي.....؟
How long..........?	كم طول أفقي.....؟

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
look (beautiful)	يبدو (جميل)	looked (beautiful)
protect	يحمي	protected
need	يحتاج	needed
walk	يمشي	walked

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
keep	يحافظ علي	kept
lose	يفقد	lost
hear	يسمع	heard

Study the following

1. Rhim gazelles look very beautiful. – تبدو غزلان الريم جميل جدا.
2. They have big ears and long horns. – لديهم آذان كبيرة وقرون طويلة.
3. They have yellow, white coats which, protect them from the sun. – لديهم صوف أبيض وأصفر ليحميهم من الشمس.
4. The fennec fox lives in the deserts of North Africa. – يعيش ثعلب الصحراء فى صحراء شمال افريقيا.
5. It's smaller than other foxes. – انه أصغر من الثعالب الأخرى.
6. The fennec fox needs big ears to hear insects and small animals. – يحتاج ثعلب الصحراء اذن كبيرة ليسمع الحشرات والحيوانات الصغيرة.
7. The fennec fox loses heat from its ears. – يفقد ثعلب الصحراء الحرارة من اذنيه.
8. The fennec fox's fur keeps it warm. – يحافظ فرو ثعلب الصحراء على دفئه.

Language Functions وظائف لغوية

ندرس فى هذا الدرس بعض الحقائق عن الحيوانات فى الصحراء، لذلك يجب معرفة الأسئلة التى من خلالها نتعرف على هؤلاء الحيوانات.

1. **Where does it live?** أين يعيش؟

In + المكان. :للإجابة

Where does the fennec fox live?

In the deserts of North Africa.



2. **How tall is it?** كم يبلغ طوله «رأسى»؟

.......centimeters.

3. **What does it eat?** ماذا يأكل؟

Insects, small lizards and mice.

4. **Why does the fennec fox have big ears?** لماذا لدى ثعلب الصحراء أذن كبيرة؟

So it can hear small animals and insects.

5. **How heavy is a rhim gazelle?** كم وزنه......؟

About / Around......... kilogram(s).

6. **How long is it?** كم طوله «أفقى»......؟

.... meters / centimeters.



7. **How long does it live?** كم المدة التى يعيشها؟

Around / About .... years.

Animal fact file:

Rhim gazelle

Rhim gazelles look very beautiful. They live in the Sahara Desert, and they walk around looking for grass, leaves and plants to eat. They have big ears and long horns. They have yellow-white coats which protect them from the sun. Like camels, they don't need to drink a lot of water.

How long is a rhim gazelle's horn?	20 - 30 cm
How heavy is a rhim gazelle?	20 - 30 kg
How long does it live?	about 14 years
What color is its coat?	yellow-white

1 Read the text quickly and answer T (True) or F (False):

اقرأ النص سريعًا وأجب صح أو خطأ:

	True	False
1. Rhim gazelles live near the sea.		
2. Rhim gazelles eat plants and leaves.		
3. Rhim gazelles have short horns.		
4. Rhim gazelles have dark-colored coats.		
5. Rhim gazelles live for about 14 years.		

2 Think about an animal you like. Make a chart and find out:

فكر فى حيوان تحبه. أعمل جدول واكتشف:

1. Write down everything you know about the animal.
2. Think what information you need.

- What do they eat?
- Where do they live?
- How heavy are they?
- Why are they special?

3 Do some research and write what you learned: قم بعمل بحث واكتب ما تعلمته:

K What I Know ما أعرفه	W What I Want to Know ما أريد أن أعرفه	L What I Learned ما تعلمته
Dolphins are not dangerous. They are not fish.		

A poster about an Egyptian desert animal
بوستر عن حيوان صحراوي مصري

4 Work in groups. Think and research: اعمل فى مجموعات. فكر وابحث:

- Find an Egyptian desert animal. فكر في حيوان صحراوي مصري.
  - ➤ Where does it live? أين يعيش؟
  - ➤ What does it eat? ماذا يأكل؟
  - ➤ Why is it special? لماذا هو مميز؟

5 Read and do: اقرأ وافعل:

1. Draw or find some pictures you can use.
2. Make your poster.

The fennec fox:

The fennec fox lives in the deserts of North Africa It is smaller than other foxes. It is 20 centimeters high. It weighs around 1 kilogram. It is 30 - 40 centimeters long. Its ears are big, really big! The fennec fox needs big ears to hear insects and small animals. The fennec fox eats insects, lizards, and small mice.



During the day, it's hot in the desert. The fennec fox loses heat from its ears. At night it's cold. The fennec fox's thick fur keeps it warm.

Activities

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة

1. The fennec fox's thick .... keeps it warm.
   a mouth b fur c beak d wing
2. A: How .... is the rhim gazelle? B: About 20 - 30 kg.
   a long b tall c heavy d high
3. The fennec fox .... heat from its ears.
   a looks b loses c walks d keeps
4. Rhim gazelles have coats which .... them from the sun.
   a see b run c protect d drink

2 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 How long is	a. not fish.
2 The fennec fox has	b. it special?
3 Why is	c. white-yellow coats.
4 Dolphins are	d. big ears.
	e. a rhim gazelle?

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

Unit 2 Desert Animals

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:
اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. smaller – It's – than - foxes - other. (دمياط - دمياط الجديدة ٢٠٢٣)

---

2. long – does – How – live – it?

---

3. dangerous – are – not – Dolphins. (محافظة الاسكندرية - المنتزة ٢٠٢٣)

---

4. very – look – beautiful – Rhim gazelles.

---

4 Punctuate the following:
ضع علامات الترقيم:

how long does a rhim gazelle live

---

5 Write a paragraph of TWENTY FOUR (24) words using the following guiding elements:
اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٢٤) كلمة عن:



Rhim gazelles

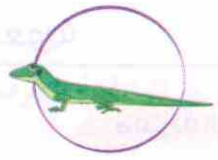
beautiful - horns



Review

Animals, birds and insects حيوانات وطيور وحشرات


fennec fox ثعلب الصحراء


lizard سحلية


spider عنكبوت


eagle طائر العقاب


elephant فيل


dolphin دولفين


crocodile تمساح


pelican بجعة


camel جمل

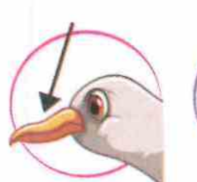

rhim gazelle غزال الريم

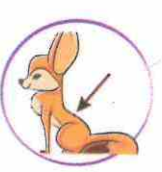

snake ثعبان


mouse فأر


horse حصان

Animals body parts أجزاء جسم الحيوان


beak منقار


fur فرو

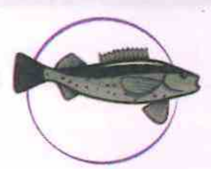

horns قرون


flat feet أقدام مسطحة


eye عين الحصان

A short story قصة قصيرة


bear
دب


juicy fish
سمكة عصيرية


claw
مخلب


paw
كف حيوان

Grammar قواعد لغوية

Comparative adjectives مقارنة الصفات

① تستخدم الصفات لوصف الأسماء

- The crocodile is scary.

1 الصفات القصيرة

➤ نضيف (er) آخر الصفة:

اسم + صفة قصيرة + er + than + اسم

- The spider is **scarier than** the crocodile.

② يمكن أيضا أن نستخدم الصفات للمقارنة بين شخصين أو شيئين أو حيوانين كالآتي

2 الصفات الطويلة

➤ لا نضيف (er) للصفات الطويلة عند المقارنة.

➤ نضيف قبل الصفة الطويلة less / more.

beautiful ⟶ **less / more** beautiful

اسم + more / less + صفة طويلة + than + اسم

- Eagles are **more beautiful than** insects.

ملاحظات على نطق بعض الكلمات

❶ ننطق كلمة (pelican) بشكل صحيح انطق الحرف (a) مثل نطق حرف (o) في كلمة (second).

❷ ننطق كلمة (fur) انطق حرفي (ur) مثل نطق حرفي (ir) في كلمة (girl).

❸ انطق كلمة (bear) وكلمة (pear) مثل نطق كلمة (care) مع اختلاف أول حرف.

❹ انطق كلمة (claw) وكلمة (paw) مثل نطق كلمة (draw) مع اختلاف أول حرف.

❺ انطق كلمة (pea) مثل نطق كلمة (bee) مع اختلاف أول حرف.



❻ في كلمة (rhim gazelle) انطق الجزء (rhim) مثل كلمة (him)

مع عدم نطق حرف (h) لانه (silent) أي انها تنطق (rim) وانطق

(gazelle) بحيث ينطق (a) مثل نطق حرف (o) في كلمة (second)

ولا تنطق حرف (e) الاخير حيث ينطق آخر مقطع (zelle) مثل (zel).

Writing Skills

مهارات الكتابة

Write a paragraph / an email of TWENTY FOUR (24) words.

Answers to Paragraphs / Emails

Lesson 1

Animals in our country

1. There are many animals in our country. For example, spiders are helpful, they eat insects. Snakes are dangerous, but they eat insects and lizards. These animals are important.

Lesson 3

2.

New Message

To	amr@gmail.com
From	hani@yahoo.com
Subject	The pelican and the bear

Cc Bcc

Dear Amr,

How are you? I'd like to tell you about the story I read yesterday. There was a bear and a pelican. They both wanted to eat a fish in the river. But the bear was kinder and gave the fish to the pelican.

See you soon.

Yours,
Hani

Lessons 4 - 5

Rhim gazelles

3. Rhim gazelles look very beautiful. They live in the Sahara Desert. They eat grass and plants. They have long horns. They don't need to drink a lot of water. They can run very fast.

Activity - Unit 2

The fennec fox

4. The fennec fox lives in the desert. It has big ears to hear insects and small animals. It eats insects and lizards. Its thick fur keeps it warm at night.

Al-Azhar Exercises



الأسئلة الخاصة بالأزهر الشريف

A- Listening



1 Listen and choose the correct answer: استمع وأختر:

1. Horses are very .... (slow - fast - weak)
2. Horses can live up to .... years. (thirty - forty - fifty)

B- Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialog: أقرأ وأكمل:

live - lakes - pelican

A : Look at this picture. What is this?

B : This is a ------------------------------------ .

A : Where does it ------------------------------------ ?

B : It lives in ------------------------------------

C- Reading Comprehension

3 Read and choose the correct answer: أقرأ واختر:

I live in a small town. My school is next to a big park. My father is a teacher. He is very kind. He teaches English. Students like him very much.

Choose the correct answer:

1. I live in a .... town. (big - small - tall)
2. My school is next to a big .... (hospital - farm - park)
3. My father is a .... (vet - doctor - teacher)
4. My father is very .... (unkind - kind - bad)
5. My father teaches .... (English - Arabic - history)

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

D- Vocabulary and Structures

4 Choose the right answer from a, b, or c: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة

1. A snake is more .... than a fox.
   a cute b slow c dangerous
2. A mouse is .... than an elephant.
   a smaller b very small c smallest
3. Spiders eat ....
   a ice cream b soup c insects
4. A: .... does the fennec fox live? B: In the deserts.
   a When b Where c Why
5. Camels have large .... feet.
   a fur b flat c noisy

E- Writing

5 Rearrange the words to make correct sentences:

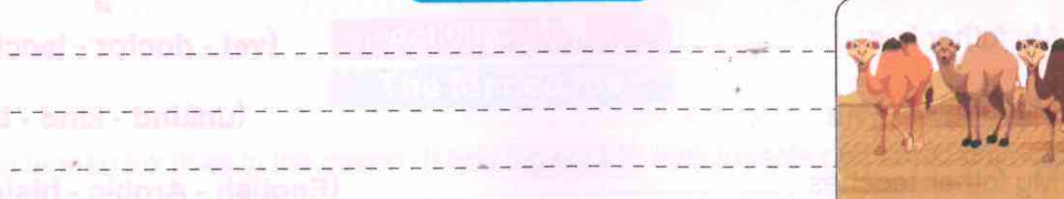
اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. eat - What - it - does?
   ----
2. hungry - are - They - very.
   ----
3. eats - small - The pelican - fish.
   ----
4. to - need - look after - Horses - people - them.
   ----

6 Write a paragraph of Four (4) sentences about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من ٤ أربع جمل عن:

Camels







Activity on Unit 2

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

	True	False
1 Camels are weak animals.		
2 Camels can carry heavy things.		
3 We can use the camels' fur to make clothes.		
4 The camels can live without water for a short time.		

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Lions are more .... than giraffes.
   a bigger b dangerous c stronger d noisier
2. The fennec fox has .... ears.
   a big b small c little d tiny
3. .... animals are dangerous?
   a When b Which c Who d Where
4. The fennec fox is smaller .... any other foxes.
   a then b than c that d there

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

fresh - fast - eyes - bad

Horses are amazing animals. They are very ❶ .... They have beautiful big ❷ .... They eat grass and they like to drink ❸ .... water. They are shorter than camels.

4 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 The camels are very noisy	a. long horns.
2 We use fractions	b. in everyday life.
3 A pelican	c. and they can get angry.
4 Rhim gazelle has	d. has a beak.
	e. foot special?

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

5 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

My name is Hani. My uncle lives in Fayoum. He has a big farm. He has a lot of animals. I can see cows, hens, goats and horses on the farm. I like horses very much. They aren't dangerous. They are strong animals. I like to feed **them**. They eat grass and drink fresh water. They can carry heavy things. They are useful.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined word "**them**" refers to ....
   a goats b cows c horses d hens
2. Horses are ....
   a dangerous b useful c ugly d scary

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Where does Hani's uncle live?_ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _
4. What does Hani's uncle have on the farm?_ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. very - Are - dangerous - snakes? (السويس - الأربعين ٢٠٢٣)
_ _
2. are - perfect - Camels - desert - for - the. (مطروح - سيوة ٢٠٢٣)
_ _
3. gazelles - have - Rhim - coats - yellow-white.
_ _

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

where does a camel live
_ _

8 Write a paragraph of TWENTY FOUR (24) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٢٤) كلمة عن:

مجاب عنه آخر الوحدة

The fennec fox

ears - fur

(السويس - جبل عتاقة ٢٠٢٣)

_ _
_ _
_ _
_ _

Theme 1

I discover myself

Unit 3

Why do we grow plants?

لماذا نزرع النباتات؟

لنطق الكلمات الجديدة التي أعلاها علامة نجمة* أنظر آخر الوحدة



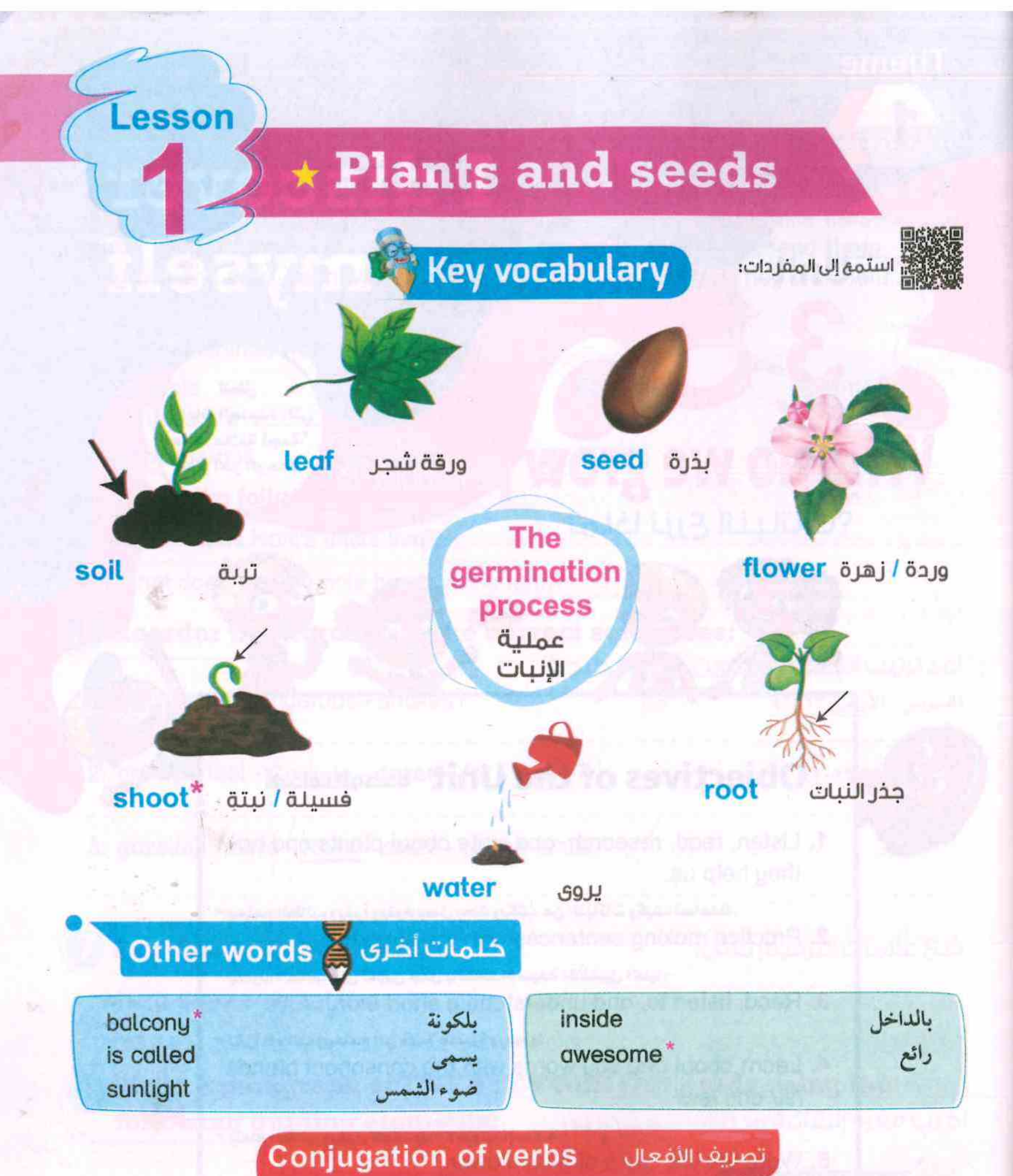


Objectives of the Unit أهداف الوحدة

1. Listen, read, research, and write about plants and how they help us.
   - يستمع الطالب ويقرأ ويقوم بعمل بحث ويكتب عن النباتات وكيف تساعدنا.
2. Practice making sentences with the superlative.
   - يتدرب الطالب على تكوين جمل بإستخدام صيغة التفضيل العليا.
3. Read, listen to, and understand a short story.
   - يقرأ الطالب ويستمع إلى قصة قصيرة ويفهمها.
4. Learn about and say words with the consonant blends /sl/ and /sw/.
   - يتعلم الطالب ويقول كلمات بها الأصوات الساكنة /sl/ و /sw/.
5. Write the life cycle of a sunflower.
   - يكتب الطالب عن دورة حياة زهرة عباد الشمس.
6. Research and write a short report.
   - يقوم الطالب بعمل بحث ويكتب تقرير قصير.







Other words كلمات أخرى

balcony*	بلكونة	inside	بالداخل
is called	يسمى	awesome*	رائع
sunlight	ضوء الشمس		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
die	يموت	died
plant	يزرع	planted

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
grow	ينمو / يزرع	grew
find	يجد	found
become	يصبح	became

Help your child learn about the germination process. ساعد طفلك ان يتعلم عن عملية الانبات.

Study the following

1. Why are the tomatoes green? – لماذا تكون الطماطم خضراء؟
2. Tomatoes are green before they are red. – تكون الطماطم خضراء قبل أن تكون حمراء.
3. How do we grow new tomatoes? – كيف نزرع نباتات طماطم جديدة؟
4. Tomatoes have seeds inside. – يوجد بذور داخل الطماطم.
5. We plant a seed and the plant grows. – نزرع البذرة وينمو النبات.
6. We water the plant every day and the roots grow under the soil. – نروى النبات كل يوم وينمو الجذر تحت التربة.
7. The plant grows flowers and the flowers become tomato fruits. – ينمو النبات ليصبح زهور وتصبح الزهور فاكهة الطماطم.

1 Listen and read: استمع واقرأ:

استمع إلى النص:

Dad : Come and look!

Seleem : What is it, Dad?

Dad : Our tomato plants are growing on the **balcony**! Look, can you see the leaves and the flowers?

Seleem : Oh yes, but why are the tomatoes green?

Dad : Tomatoes are green before they are red.

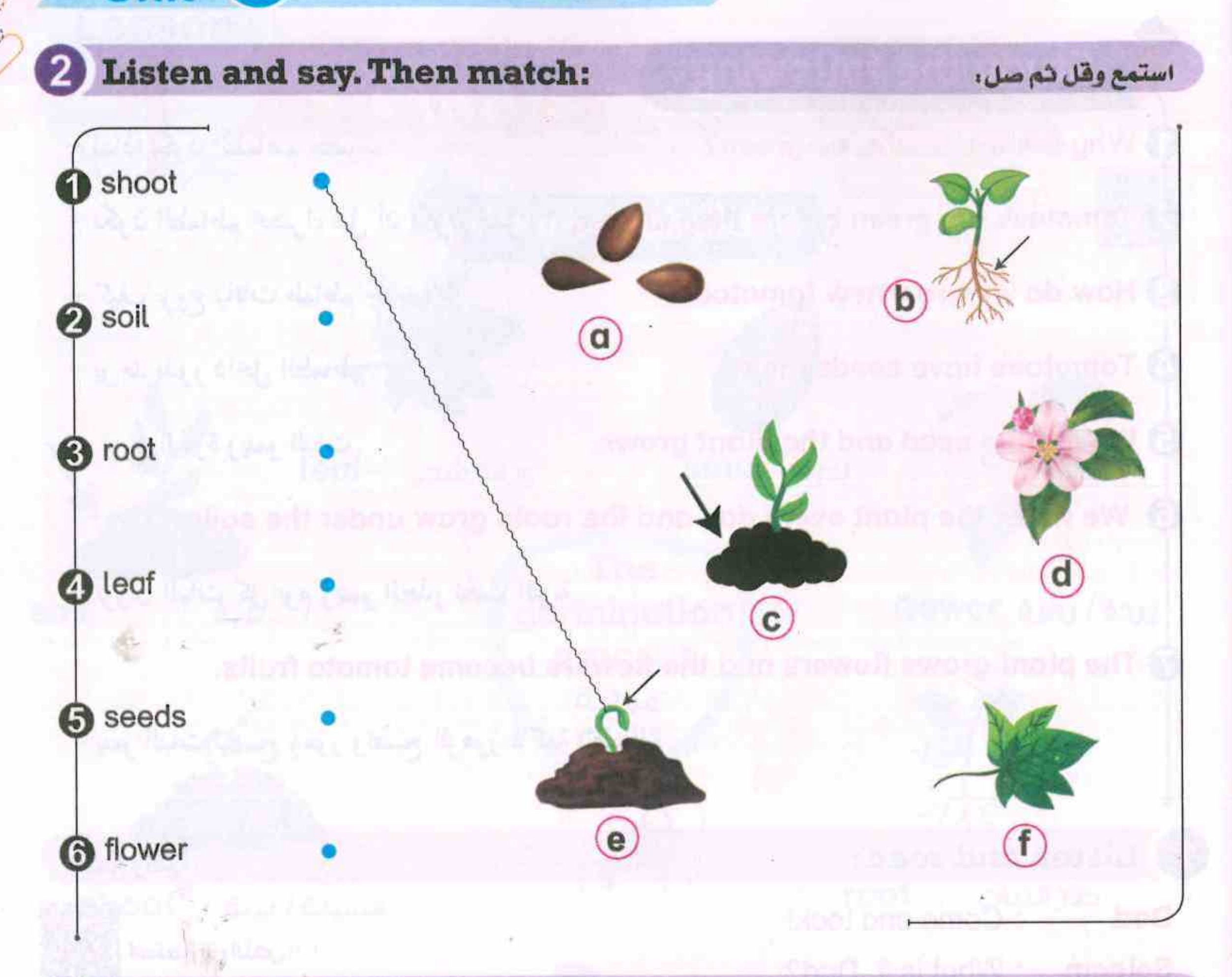
Seleem : How do we grow new tomatoes?

Dad : Tomatoes have seeds inside. We can take the seeds and grow new tomatoes! We plant a seed and the plant grows. That is called **germination**. We **water** the plant every day and the roots grow under the soil. The plant grows flowers and the flowers become tomato fruits.

Seleem : That's awesome! And I found a red tomato! Let's have it for lunch!

Help your child listen and read. ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

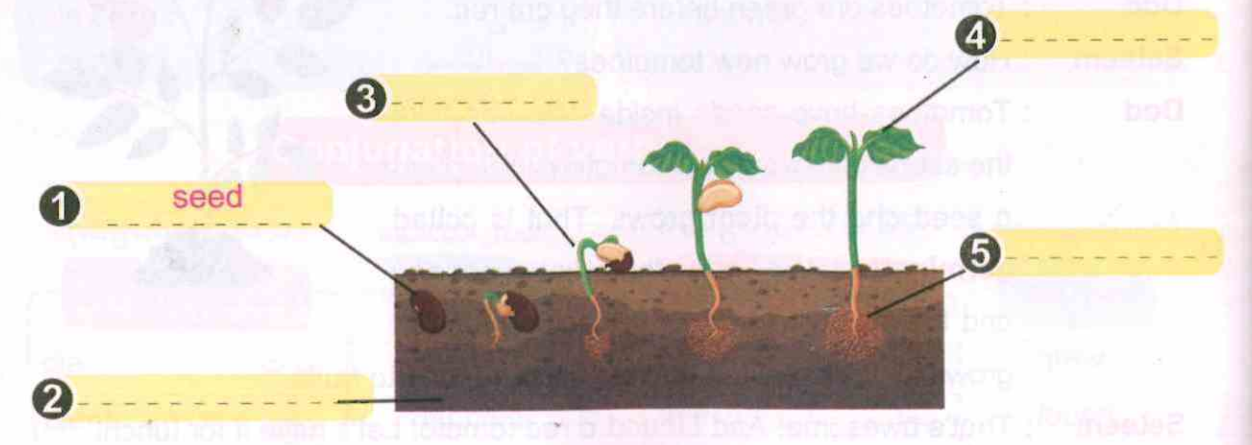
2 Listen and say. Then match: استمع وقل ثم صل



3 Look and complete: انظر وأكمل

leaf - roots - seed - shoot - soil

The germination process





لاحظ إذا انتهى الاسم المفرد بحرف (f) أو (fe) يجمع بحذف حرف (f) أو (fe) وأضافة (ves):

leaf	leaves

4 Listen and check: استمع وتأكد

استمع إلى النص الآتي وتأكد من خطوات عملية الإنبات في التمرين رقم ٣:

استمع إلى النص:





Tapescript نص الاستماع

The Germination process

We put a seed in soil. The seed needs sunlight and water so it can grow. The seed grows roots under the soil. Then it grows a shoot and gets taller above the soil. Finally, the full (الكامل) plant grows leaves and flowers.



Did you know?

Did you know that we eat this cacao seed?

Chocolate comes from this plant.

هل تعلم

هل تعلم أننا نأكل بذور الكاكاو؟ حيث تأتي الشيكولاتة من هذا النبات.

Activities



1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

	True	False
1 Tomatoes are green before they are red.		
2 We water the plant every week.		
3 The roots grow above the soil.		
4 Tomatoes have seeds inside.		

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة

1. The roots grow .... the soil.
   a on b above c under d of
2. There are .... inside the tomatoes.
   a flowers b plants c seeds d trees
3. Tomatoes are .... before they are red.
   a green b yellow c brown d pink
4. We can use the seeds to .... new tomatoes.
   a die b grow c drink d walk

3 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل

A	B
1 How do we	a. the houses.
2 We water	b. the plants every day.
3 Tomatoes have	c. grow new tomatoes?
4 The flowers become	d. tomato fruits.
	e. seeds inside.

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. it - for - Let's - lunch - have. ______________________
2. are - Why - green - tomatoes - the? ______________________
3. put - We - in - soil - a seed. ______________________

5 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

how do we grow new tomatoes ______________________

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة

Lesson 2 ★ Plants in Egypt

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:

Plants نباتات

- lotus flower زهرة اللوتس
- tamarisk نبات الأثل
- bean plant نبات الفول
- reed* نبات القصب(البوص)
- acacia* شجرة السنط
- sunflower دوار(عباد) الشمس
- rose وردة
- daisy* زهرة الاقحوان
- orange tree شجرة البرتقال

Plant habitats بيئة أو موطن النباتات

- agricultural* habitat بيئة زراعية
- desert habitat* بيئة صحراوية
- rivers and lakes انهار وبحيرات

Help your child learn about plant habitats. ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن موطن النباتات.

Other words كلمات أخرى 

maize	ذرة	eggplant	ثمرة باذنجان
beetle	خنفسة	butterfly	فراشة
suitcase	حقيبة سفر		

Study the following

1. Farmers grow food for us to eat.
– يزرع المزارعون الطعام لنأكله.
2. Plants near rivers and lakes need a lot of water.
– تحتاج النباتات القريبة من الأنهار والبحيرات إلى كثير من الماء.
3. There is not much rain in the desert.
– لا يوجد الكثير من الأمطار في الصحراء.
4. Plants that live in the desert do not need a lot of water.
– لا تحتاج النباتات التي تعيش في الصحراء إلى الكثير من الماء.
5. How big is the flower?
– كم حجم الزهرة؟
6. A habitat is a place where living things live and grow.
بيئة الحيوان أو النبات هي مكان تعيش فيه الكائنات الحية وتنمو.

Grammar قواعد لغوية

Superlative Adjectives صيغة التفضيل العليا للصفات

- درسنا في الوحدة السابقة المقارنة بين شخصين أو شيئين أو حيوانين:
- ندرس في هذا الدرس المقارنة بين شخص و مجموعة أشخاص أو شئ ومجموعة أشياء أو حيوان ومجموعة حيوانات.

1 الصفات القصيرة

- اذا كانت الصفة قصيرة نضع قبلها (the) وفي أخرها (est):

الاسم + the + صفة قصيرة + est

- The sunflower is the biggest flower.
- Ahmed is tall. Fatma is taller than Ahmed. Karma is taller than Fatma.
- Karma is the tallest.

2 الصفات الطويلة

الاسم + the most الاكثر/ the least الاقل + صفة طويلة.

- The rose is the most beautiful flower.
- The sunflower is the least beautiful flower.

Help your child learn about superlative adjectives. ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم مقارنة الصفات العليا.

لاحظ

اذا انتهت الصفة بـ y + حرف ساكن نحذف حرف (y) ونضيف (iest):

heavy ⟶ heaviest

اذا انتهت الصفة بحرف ساكن وقبله حرف متحرك نضاعف الحرف الساكن عند إضافة (est):

big ⟶ biggest thin ⟶ thinnest

إذا انتهت الصفة بحرف (e) نضيف (st) فقط:

nice ⟶ nicest

صفات قصيرة	صفات طويلة
tall	beautiful
big	perfect
nice	delicious

- ندرس في هذا الدرس الأماكن التي تنمو بها النباتات وما نوع النباتات التي تنمو في كل منطقة:

River or lake نهر أو بحيرة		Agricultural بيئة زراعية		Desert صحراء	
1- lotus flower	زهرة اللوتس	1- bean plant	نبات الفول	1- tamarisk	نبات الأثل
2- reed	نبات البوص	2- orange tree	شجرة البرتقال	2- acacia	شجرة السنط

1 Read about plant habitats and label the photos:

أقرأ عن موطن النباتات وضع اسم كل موطن للنباتات تحت الصورة المناسبة:

1  ....

2  ....

3  ....

Agricultural habitat
Farmers work here. They grow food for us to eat.

Rivers and lakes
Plants near rivers and lakes need a lot of water.

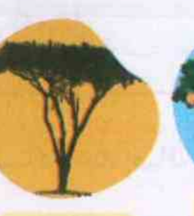
Desert habitat
There is not much rain here. Plants that live in the desert do not need a lot of water.

2 Where do these plants live? Complete the table:

أين تعيش هذه النباتات؟ اكمل الجدول:






lotus flower | tamarisk | bean plant | reed | acacia | orange tree

River or lake	Agricultural	Desert
1- lotus flower	3-	5- ....
2-	4-	6- ....

3 Look at the fact file and read the differences between the flowers:

أنظر الى ملف الحقائق واقرأ الفروق بين الزهور:

	daisy	rose	sunflower
How big is the flower?	2.5 - 5 cm	about 6 cm	7.5 - 15 cm
How tall is it?	10 cm	60 cm	1 - 3.5 m
How long does it live?	around 6 days	around 10 days	around 2 weeks
How heavy is it?	around 20 g	around 50 g	around 200 g

4 Read and answer T (True) or F (False):

اقرأ واجب بنعم أو لا:

	True	False
1 The rose is smaller than the daisy.		
2 The sunflower is taller than the daisy.		
3 The sunflower is the biggest flower.		
4 The rose lives the longest.		
5 The daisy is the heaviest.		

5 Write sentences to compare these plants and animals:

اكتب الجمل باستخدام صيغة المقارنة للنباتات والحيوانات (استخدم صيغة المقارنة والتفضيل كما فى المثال):

1. (cat / snake / fox / scary)

A fox is scarier than a cat. A snake is scarier than a fox. A snake is the scariest animal.

2. (maize / bean / eggplant / delicious)

____

____

3. (grape / orange / lemon / big)

____

____

4. (bee / beetle / butterfly / beautiful)

____

____

Activities

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. A snake is .... than a fox.

a small b smallest c smaller d least

2. A reed is the .... plant.

a tallest b taller c tall d as tall

3. My city is the .... place to live in.

a as nice b nicest c nicer d nice

4. I think a rose is the .... beautiful flower.

a more b less c least d as

5. I think the eggplant is the .... plant.

a as delicious b most delicious

c less delicious d more delicious

6. A lion is the .... animal.

a strong b strongest c stronger d very strong

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

rain - desert - grow - seeds

There are different plant habitats in our world. They are agricultural, rivers and lakes and ❶ .... habitats. In the agricultural habitat, farmers ❷ .... food for us. In the desert, there isn't much ❸ .... and plants don't need much water.

3 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 Plants in the desert	a. is the flower?
2 How long does	b. need a lot of water.
3 How big	c. do not need a lot of water.
4 Plants near rivers	d. the sunflower live?
	e. shoot

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. grow - for - **Farmers** - food - us. (أسيوط - البداري ٢٠٢٣)

- -

2. **Some** - a lot of - need - water - plants.

- -

3. in - isn't - much - **There** - rain - the desert.

- -

4. beautiful - the - **The daisy** - flower - is - most. (البحيرة - النوبارية ٢٠٢٣)

- -

5 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

how heavy is the daisy

- -

6 Write a paragraph of TWENTY FOUR (24) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٢٤) كلمة عن:

مجاب عنه اخر الوحدة

Plants

rose - beautiful

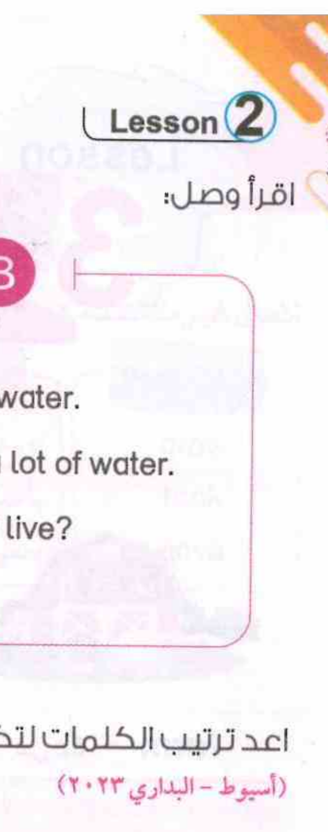
- -

- -

- -

- -

- -



Lesson 3

★ A short story
★ Math - Pronunciation

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:


farm مزرعة

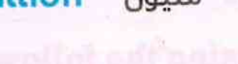

land أرض

dry جاف


noise ضوضاء




liter لتر


million* مليون


rainwater مياه الأمطار

1,000,000,000
billion* مليار

Other words كلمات أخرى

the United States	الولايات المتحدة
polluted air	هواء ملوث
work hard	يعمل بجد
on the farm	في المزرعة

grandparents	اجداد
life	الحياة
proud of	فخور بـ

Help your child learn new words. ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم كلمات جديدة.

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماض
decide	يقرر	decided
live	يعيش	lived
plant	يزرع	planted
breathe	يتنفس	breathed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماض
grow	يزرع	grew
take	يأخذ	took
give	يعطي	gave

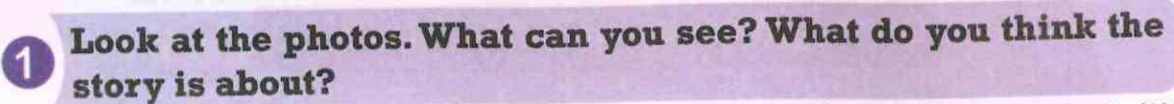
Describe a story صف القصة

boring	ممل
interesting	شيق

OK	جيد
I don't understand.	لم أفهم.

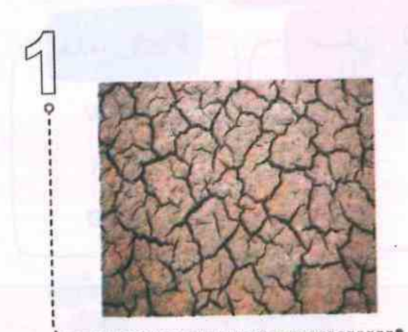
Study the following

1. The land was very dry.
   - كانت الأرض جافة جدًا.
2. They didn't like the polluted air and the noise.
   - لم يحبوا الهواء الملوث والضوضاء.
3. They decided to buy some land.
   - قرروا أن يشتروا بعض من الأرض.
4. They used rainwater to water the seeds.
   - استخدموا مياه الأمطار ليسقوا البذور.
5. They needed about a billion liters of water a year.
   - احتاجوا حوالي مليار لتر من المياه في السنة.
6. They are very proud of Lucas's grandparents.
   - هم فخورين جدًا بأجداد لوكس.



1 **Look at the photos. What can you see? What do you think the story is about?**

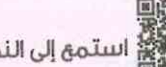
انظر إلى الصور. ماذا ترى؟ وفي رأيك ما الموضوع الذي تدور حوله القصة؟

1 

2 

3 

2 **Listen and read:** استمع واقرأ:



استمع إلى النص:

Lucas and his farm

Lucas lives on a farm in the United States. It is a very **special** farm. Forty years ago, the land was very **dry**. There were no farms. No one wanted to live there.

Lucas's grandparents lived in the city, but they didn't like it. They didn't like the **polluted air** and the noise. They wanted to have a farm. They decided to buy some land.

At first, life was very difficult. They worked very hard and they planted **millions** of seeds. They used **rainwater** to water the seeds. They needed about **a billion** liters of water a year.

They grew many fruits like oranges and lemons. They brought animals to the land. They planted trees and flowers.

Today, Lucas lives on the farm with his mom and dad. They are very happy and they have a good life. They are very **proud** of Lucas's grandparents. They used plants to make the land green.

Help your child read a short story. ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ قصة قصيرة.



تعرف على الارقام حتى المليار:

100	1,000	10,000	100,000
a hundred مائة	a thousand الف	ten thousand عشرة الاف	a hundred thousand مائة الف

1,000,000	100,000,000	1,000,000,000
a million مليون	a hundred million مائة مليون	a billion مليار



ones آحاد	tens عشرات	hundreds مئات
thousands ألوف	ten thousands عشرات الألوف	hundred thousands مئات الألوف

millions ملايين	ten millions عشرات الملايين	hundred millions مئات الملايين	billions مليارات

لاحظ

A billion is a thousand million: 1,000,000,000

المليار يساوى ألف مليون.

Unit 3 Why do we grow plants?

- ندرس في هذا الدرس القيمة المكانية للأعداد. حيث هناك فرق بين قيمة العدد والقيمة المكانية.
- فمثلًا العدد (5) قيمته المكانية في الرقم (150) تساوي (50) والعدد (1) قيمته (100).
- ادرس الآتي:

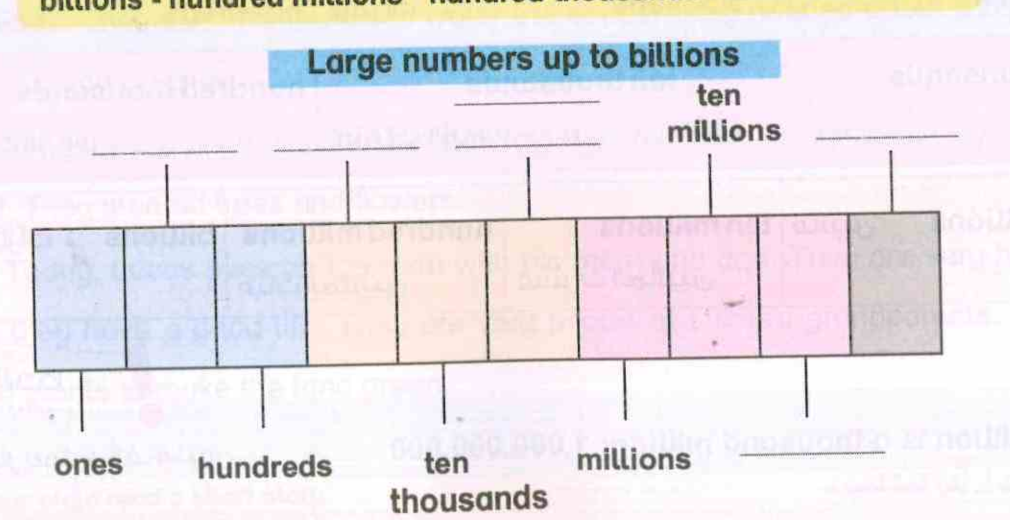
ones آحاد	→	[1-9]
tens عشرات	→	[10-99]
hundreds مئات	→	[100-999]
thousands آلوف	→	[1000-9,999]
ten thousands عشرات الآلوف	→	[10,000-99,999]
hundred thousands مئات الآلوف	→	[100,000-999,999]
millions الملايين	→	[1,000,000-9,999,999]
ten millions عشرات الملايين	→	[10,000,000-99,999,999]
hundred millions مئات الملايين	→	[100,000,000-999,999,999]
billions مليارات	→	[1,000,000,000]

- Egypt wants to plant more than 100 million palm trees across the country. This means we need to plant billions of seeds.

1 Look and label the diagram with the correct numbers:

انظر وضع الكلمات في المكان الصحيح:

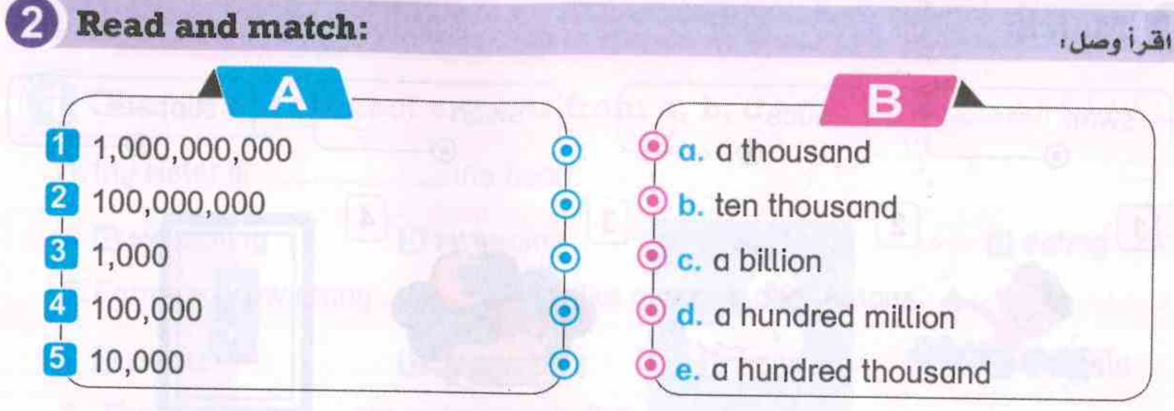
billions - hundred millions - hundred thousands - tens - thousands





2 Read and match:

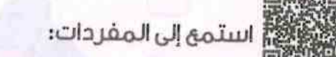
اقرأ وصل:





★ **Listen and say:** استمع وقل

استمع إلى المفردات:







لاحظ! لاحظ نضيف اللاحقة (ful) آخر كثير من الأفعال أو الأسماء لتكوين صفات تعني (مليء بـ):

Noun اسم / Verb فعل	Adjective صفة
color لون	colorful زاهي / كثير الألوان
beauty جمال	beautiful جميل
care يعتني بـ	careful حريص
help يساعد	helpful متعاون
use يستخدم	useful مفيد

1 Match: صل :



2 We use the suffix -ful at the end of many adjectives. It means full of. Find the words in the box. Check the meaning of the words in a dictionary:

نستخدم اللاحقة (ful) آخر كثير من الصفات لتعنى (ملىء ب) اوجد كلمات فى المربع الآتى. تأكد من معانى الكلمات فى القاموس:

- beautiful
- careful
- colorful
- helpful
- useful

s	l	i	h	e	p	y	u	c	m
c	a	r	e	f	u	l	i	o	w
e	s	t	l	r	g	b	w	l	h
d	w	s	p	a	n	r	t	o	t
u	s	e	f	u	l	d	u	r	d
e	h	i	u	s	w	i	t	f	h
u	p	m	l	n	g	e	o	u	b
b	e	a	u	t	i	f	u	l	e

Activities

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة

1. My sister is .... the floor.
   a swimming b sweeping c sleeping d eating
2. Farmers grow many .... like oranges and lemons.
   a drinks b vegetables c fruits d animals
3. The........................ are swimming in the river.
   a swans b sweets c slippers d shoes
4. Forty years ago, the land .... very dry.
   a has b have c is d was

2 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 A billion is a	a. liters of water to water the farm.
2 They needed a billion	b. thousand million.
3 A million is a	c. of my grandparents.
4 I'm very proud	d. thousand thousand.
	e. worked very hard.

3 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة

My grandparents had a farm in Giza. They bought it twenty years ago. They wanted to live in the village because the city was very noisy. They planted many kinds of fruits and vegetables. They kept many animals like cows, goats and sheep.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The grandparents bought the farm .... years ago.
   a 10 b 20 c 30 d 25
2. The farm was in ....
   a Cairo b Giza c Luxor d Aswan

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Why did they want to live in the village? ________________
4. What animals did they keep on the farm? ________________

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. land - was - The - very - dry. (الفيوم - إطسا ٢٠٢٣)

----

2. planted - seeds - They - of - millions.

----

3. lives - a farm - Hisham - in - Egypt - on. (المنوفية - شبين الكوم ٢٠٢٣)

----

4. rainwater - They - to - the seeds - used - water.

----

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

do you want a slice of pizza

----

6 Write an email of TWENTY FOUR (24) words using the following guiding elements about:

اكتب إيميل من (٢٤) كلمة عن:



Your uncle's farm

1- Where is your uncle's farm?
2- What does your uncle grow?

To your friend Hazem to tell him about your uncle's farm. Your email address is sameh@yahoo.com. Your friend's email address is hazem@gmail.com.

New Message

To -- Cc Bcc

From --

Subject --

Dear ----------,

Yours,

Lessons 4&5 ★ Life cycle of a sunflower

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:

English	Arabic
root	جذر
seed	بذرة
soil	تربة
shoot	نبتة
sunflower	دوار (عباد) الشمس
sunlight	ضوء الشمس
process	عملية
papyrus*	البردي
Nile Delta	دلتا النيل
paper	ورق
basket	سلة
sandals	صندل
leaves	ورق الشجر

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
face	يواجه	faced
germinate	ينبت	germinated
die	يموت	died
drop	يرمي / يلقي	dropped
start	يبدأ	started

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
put	يضع	put
grow	ينمو	grew
begin	يبدأ	began

Help your child learn new words. ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم كلمات جديدة.

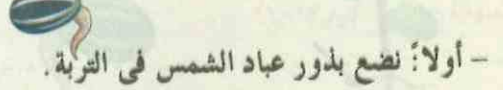
Study the following

1 ندرس فى هذا الدرس مراحل نمو (دورة حياة) زهرة عباد الشمس والكلمات المستخدمة فى ترتيب عملية ما من البداية للنهاية:

First ⟶ Next ⟶ After that ⟶ Finally

أولاً — التالى — بعد ذلك — اخيراً

- First, you plant the sunflower seed in soil.

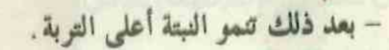


– أولاً: نضع بذور عباد الشمس فى التربة.

- Next, the seed germinates and it starts to grow roots under the soil.

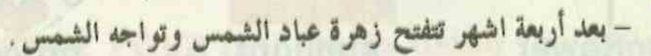
– ثانيًا: تنبت البذور وتبدأ فى نمو الجذور تحت التربة.

- After that, the shoot grows above the soil.



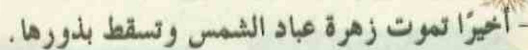
– بعد ذلك تنمو النبتة أعلى التربة.

- After about 4 months, the sunflower opens and faces the sun.



– بعد أربعة اشهر تفتح زهرة عباد الشمس وتواجه الشمس.

- Finally, the sunflower dies and drops its seeds.



– أخيرًا تموت زهرة عباد الشمس وتسقط بذورها.



2 ندرس ايضا معلومات عن أهمية نبات مصرى وهو البردى:

- Why was papyrus an important plant?
  – لماذا كان نبات البردى مهم؟
- Because Ancient Egyptians used it to make paper.
  – لأن المصريون القدماء استخدموه لعمل الورق.
- They also made sandals and baskets from papyrus.
  – صنعوا أيضًا الصنادل والسلال من البردى.
- Papyrus can help to clean water.
  – ساعد البردى فى تنظيف الماء.
- What does the plant need?
  – ماذا يحتاج النبات؟
- Water, air, soil and sunlight.
  – ماء وهواء وتربة وضوء الشمس.
- Where does it live?
  – أين يعيش البردى؟
- Near the Nile.
  – بالقرب من النيل.

1 Listen and read about the life cycle of a sunflower:

استمع واقرأ عن دورة حياة زهرة عباد الشمس:





استمع إلى النص:



1 **First**, you plant the sunflower seed in soil. You put it in sunlight and water it.

2 **Next**, the seed germinates and it starts to grow roots under the soil.



3 **After that**, the shoot grows above the soil. It grows leaves. It gets taller.



4 **After** about 4 months, the sunflower opens and faces the sun.



5 **Finally**, the sunflower dies and drops its seeds. The process begins again.

Help your child learn about the life cycle of a sunflower. ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن دورة حياة زهرة عباد الشمس.

2 Order the life cycle of a tomato. رتب دورة حياة ثمرة الطماطم.

1  2  3  4  5 

a. Finally, the tomato plant dies and drops its seeds. The process begins again. [ ]

b. After that, the shoot grows above the soil. It grows taller. [ ]

c. Next, the seed germinates, and it starts to grow roots under the soil. [ ]

d. First, you plant the tomato seed in soil. You put it in sunlight and water it. [1]

e. After a few weeks, the plant grows leaves, flowers and tomatoes. [ ]



3 Work in groups. Think and research: اعمل فى ثنائيات. فكر وابحث:

A report about a plant

Find an Egyptian plant. اقرأ التقرير ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Papyrus



Papyrus is a very special plant. It is famous because Ancient Egyptians used papyrus to make paper. They also made sandals and baskets from papyrus.



Papyrus needs a lot of water and warm weather to grow quickly. It grows in the Nile Delta near the river.

1. Why is it an important plant?
----
2. What does the plant need?
----
3. Where does it live?



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة

1. The sunflower dies and drops its ....
   a seeds b soil c roots d paper
2. Ancient Egyptians made .... and baskets from papyrus.
   a trains b cars c rocks d sandals
3. The plant needs water, soil and ....
   a fire b sunlight c salt d sugar
4. The shoot grows above the ....
   a soil b sky c sun d star
5. Egyptians used papyrus to make ....
   a metal b plastic c paper d wool

2 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 Papyrus needs	a. begins again.
2 Put the sunflower in	b. in the Nile Delta.
3 Papyrus is	c. a very special plant.
4 Papyrus grows	d. a lot of water.
	e. the sun.

3 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Papyrus is a very special plant that grows in the Nile Delta. It is famous because Ancient Egyptians used it to make paper. They also made sandals and

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

baskets from papyrus. Papyrus needs a lot of water and warm weather to grow quickly. It grows in the Nile Delta near the river.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The Ancient Egyptians used papyrus to make ....

a food b paper c clothes d roots

2. The main idea of the passage is about ....

a water b gas c papyrus d money

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What is papyrus?



----

4. Where does it live?

----

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملا صحيحة:

1. put - the seed - You - sunlight - in.

----

2. special - Papyrus - plant - is - a very.

----

3. opens - and - The sunflower - faces - the sun.

----

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1. what does papyrus need

----

2. the shoot grows above the soil



Review

The germination process عملية الانبات





seed بذرة — water يروى — shoot فسيلة / نبتة — soil تربة

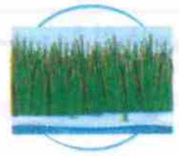




root جذر النبات — leaf ورقة شجر — flower وردة — tomato ثمرة طماطم

Plants نباتات




lotus flower زهرة اللوتس — tamarisk نبات الاثل — bean plant نبات الفول — reed نبات القصب — acacia شجرة السنط







daisy زهرة الاقحوان — sunflower عباد الشمس — rose وردة — orange tree شجرة البرتقال — papyrus ورق البردى

A short story قصة قصيرة








noise ضوضاء — farm مزرعة — land ارض — liter لتر — rainwater مياه الامطار — dry جاف

Math الرياضيات

100	1,000	10,000	100,000
a hundred مائة	a thousand الف	ten thousand عشرة الاف	a hundred thousand مائة الف

1,000,000	100,000,000	1,000,000,000
a million مليون	a hundred million مائة مليون	a billion مليار

Grammar قواعد لغوية

Superlative Adjectives
صيغة التفضيل العليا للصفات

- ندرس فى هذا الدرس المقارنة بين شخص ومجموعة أشخاص أو شئ ومجموعة اشياء أو حيوان ومجموعة حيوانات.

1 الصفات القصيرة

الاسم + the + صفة قصيرة + est

- The elephant is the biggest animal on land.

2 الصفات الطويلة

الاسم + the most / least + صفة طويلة

- This bird is the least beautiful bird.
- The snake is the most dangerous animal.

لاحظ

اذا انتهت الصفة بـ y + حرف ساكن نحذف حرف (y) ونضع (iest):

heavy ⟶ heaviest

إذا انتهت الصفة بحرف ساكن وقبله حرف متحرك نضاعف الحرف الساكن عند اضافة (est):

big ⟶ biggest thin ⟶ thinnest

إذا انتهت الصفة بحرف (e) نضيف (st) فقط:

nice ⟶ nicest

ملاحظات على نطق بعض الكلمات

1. لنطق كلمة (balcony) بشكل صحيح انطق حرف (a) كما ينطق فى كلمة (man) وانطق حرف (o) كما ينطق فى كلمة (second).
2. لنطق كلمة (awesome) انطق الحروف (awe) مثل نطق حرفى (oo) فى كلمة (door) وانطق حرف (o) فى (some) كما ينطق فى كلمة (second) ولا تنطق حرف (e).
3. لنطق كلمة (shoot) انطق حرفى (oo) كما ينطقان مثل كلمة (moon).
4. فى كلمة (agricultural) حرفى (tu) ينطقان مثل (تش) فى اللغة العربية.
5. لنطق كلمة (habitat) انطق حرفى (a) فى أول وآخر الكلمة كما ينطق فى كلمة (man).
6. كلمة (reed) تنطق مثل كلمة (seed) تماماً.
7. كلمة (acacia) ينطق حرف (a) الأول مثل (o) فى كلمة (second) وحرف ال (a) الثانى ينطق مثل حرف (a) فى كلمة (make) والمقطع الصوتى (ci) ينطق مثل (ش) فى اللغة العربية.
8. فى كلمة (daisy) انطق المقطع الصوتى (dai) مثل كلمة (day) وحرف (s) ينطق مثل (z).
9. لنطق كلمة (billion) و (million) انطق حرف (i) الاول مثل نطقه فى (bin) وحرف (i) الثانى مثل نطق (y) فى (yes) و حرف (o) كما ينطق فى (second).
10. فى كلمة (papyrus) انطق حرفى (u/a) مثل نطق حرف (o) فى (second) وانطق (py) مثل نطق (pie) تماماً.





مهارات الكتابة

Write a paragraph / an email of TWENTY FOUR (24) words.

Answers to Paragraphs / Emails

Lesson 2

Plants

1. These plants are beautiful. They are also different. The rose is taller than the daisy. The daisy is colorful. The sunflower is the heaviest.



Lesson 3

2.

New Message		Cc Bcc
To	hazem@gmail.com	
From	sameh@yahoo.com	
Subject	My uncle's farm	

Dear Hazem,

How are you? I want to tell you about my uncle's farm. It's in Sharkia. My uncle grows a lot of plants. He keeps a lot of animals. My uncle raise chickens and ducks, too. I play with the ducks.

Yours,
Sameh

Activity - Unit 3

Sunflowers

3. Sunflowers are beautiful. A sunflower faces the sun every day. Farmers grow sunflowers to take their seeds. The seeds of the sunflowers are useful. I like sunflowers.



Al-Azhar Exercises — الأسئلة الخاصة بالأزهر الشريف



A- Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer: استمع وأختر:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Samir is my .... (father - brother - friend)
2. He wants to be a .... (teacher - doctor - vet)

B- Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialog: أقرأ وأكمل:

beautiful - this - at

A : Look ---------------- this plant.
B : What is -- ?
A : It's a sunflower.
B : Oh! A sunflower. It's -- .

C- Reading Comprehension

3 Read and choose the correct answer: أقرأ واختر:

My friend Salim likes farms and plants. He likes the green color of the leaves. He likes to use the seeds to grow new plants. He waters the plants every day. The roots grow under the soil. My friend Salim becomes very happy when there is a flower.

Choose the correct answer:

1. My friend Salim likes .... and plants. (towns - villages - farms)
2. My friend Salim likes the .... color of the leaves. (green - yellow - red)
3. Salim waters the plants every .... (week - day - year)
4. Salim likes to use the seeds to .... new plants. (eat - play - grow)
5. The roots grow .... the soil. (in - on - under)

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

D- Vocabulary and Structures

4 Choose the right answer from a, b, or c: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة

1. My city is the .... place to live in.
   a nice b nicer c nicest
2. I think koshari is the .... delicious food.
   a more b much c most
3. .... grow food for us to eat.
   a Teachers b Farmers c Doctors
4. The sunflower is the .... flower.
   a biggest b big c bigger
5. A: .... does it live? B: Near the river.
   a Where b What c When

E- Writing

5 Rearrange the words to make correct sentences: اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة

1. does - What - need - plant - the?

----

2. have - inside - Tomatoes - seeds.

----

3. have - the - I - suitcase - heaviest .

----

4. grows - near - Papyrus - river - the.

----

6 Write a paragraph of Four (4) sentences about: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من ٤ أربعة جمل عن

Your tomato plant



Activity on Unit 3

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ)،

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

	True	False
1 We can grow plants in any habitat.		
2 Papyrus doesn't need water.		
3 Papyrus grows in the river habitat.		
4 Each plant needs its habitat.		

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة

1. The tomato plant dies and .... its seeds.
   a opens b gets c drops d grows
2. I think the lion is .... most dangerous animal.
   a than b the c that d there
3. The plant needs water, ... and sunlight.
   a money b soil c boil d fire
4. The daisy is the .... beautiful flower.
   a more b less c most d much

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار

plants - worked - rainwater - dry

My father is a farmer. When he was thirty years old, he bought some farms. The farms were ❶ ...., but my father ❷ .... very hard and planted a lot of seeds and used ❸ .... to water the seeds. Now, I'm on the farms and we have a lot of crops. I'm proud of my father.

4 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل

A	B
1 Why are	a. don't need a lot of water.
2 A habitat is a place	b. in desert habitat?
3 The butterfly is the	c. most beautiful insect.
4 Which plants grows	d. plants useful?
	e. where living things live and grow.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع هذه الأسئلة

5 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Ahmed lives on a farm near Benha. It's a very special farm. He grows a lot of plants there. He grows maize and gives it to the animals on the farm to feed them. Ahmed grows many fruits like oranges and lemons. Ahmed lives a good life. He is happy because he grows his food himself.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Ahmed grows oranges and ....

a pears b lemons c apples d peaches

2. Ahmed has a farm near ....

a Benha b Cairo c Tanta d Giza

B- Answer the following questions:

3. Why is Ahmed happy?

---

4. What does Ahmed give to the animals?

---

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. are - animals - Snakes - scariest - the.

---

2. good - Farms - for - land - are - the.

---

3. proud - Lucas - his - was - of - grandparents.

---

7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

i have two black slippers

---

8 Write a paragraph of TWENTY FOUR (24) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٢٤) كلمة عن:



Your tomato plant

beautiful - faces

Review 1





Objectives of the Review 1 أهداف المراجعة

Lesson 1: Listening and speaking

- To revise the vocabulary and language from Units 1 - 3.

- يراجع التلاميذ المفردات والقواعد اللغوية الموجودة بالوحدات من ١ إلى ٣.

Lesson 2: Phonics and Assessment

1. To revise the key letter sounds from Units 1 - 3.

- يراجع التلاميذ الصوتيات من الوحدات ١ إلى ٣.

2. To evaluate progress in Units 1- 3.

- يتم تقييم مدى نجاح التلاميذ فى استيعاب الوحدات من ١ الى ٣.







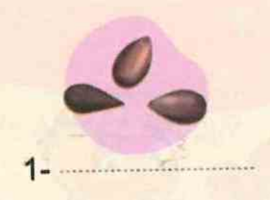
Lesson 1 ★ Units 1 - 2 & 3

1 Listen and write: استمع واكتب:



استمع إلى المفردات:

Start


1- ....


2- ....


3- ....


4- ....


5- ....


6- ....

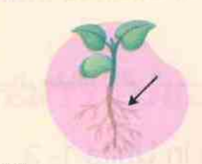
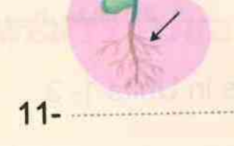

7- ....


8- ....


9- ....



10- ....



11- ....



12- ....


13- ....

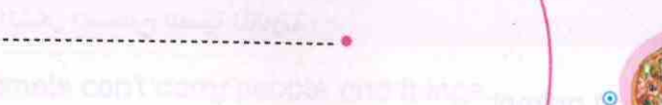

14- ....


15- ....

Finish

2 Look and write the words you see. Then match:

انظر واكتب الكلمات التى تراها ثم صل:



1- nose

2- c ....

3- m ....

4- s ....

5- s ....

6- s ....

7- p ....

8- b ....




3 Complete the sentences with verbs with 're': اكمل الجمل بأفعال تبدأ ب (re):

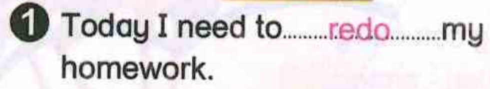
paint - make - clean - do



1 Today I need to ....redo.... my homework.



2 The kitchen was clean this morning, but now I need to .... it.




3 I need to .... my garden table.



4 I burnt the pancakes - I have to .... them.

4 Complete the table: اكمل الجدول:

1.	taller	the tallest
2. big	2.	3. ....
3. heavy	4.	the heaviest
5.	6.	the most beautiful
6. delicious	7.	8. ....

Lesson 2

★ Units 1 - 2 & 3

1 Read and write the correct form of the comparative or superlative verb: اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للصيغ المقارنة :

1. I think the cheetah is (fast) animal.

   I think the cheetah is the fastest animal.

2. An elephant is (big) than a mouse.

   ....

3. I think beans are (delicious) than potatoes.

   ....

2 Look and complete with the words in the box: انظر واكمل بكلمات من الاطار :

close - desert - drink - flat - fur - important - milk - sand - strong

I love camels. They are very ❶ .... animals in Egypt. They are ❷ .... and they can carry people and things across the ❸ ....

They are tall animals, with thin legs.

Their ❹ .... is delicious and we can use their ❺ .... to make clothes.

Camels are good animals for the desert because they don't ❻ .... a lot of water. Their feet are ❼ .... so they can walk on sand in the desert. They can ❽ .... their noses and eyes to stop the ❾ .... from coming in.



Activity 4 on Units (1,2 & 3)

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ) :

استمع إلى النص آخر الكتاب:

	True	False
① Camels can't carry people and things.		
② Camels are short animals.		
③ Camels have delicious milk.		
④ Camels are good for the desert.		

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. I don't like unhealthy food, ... I drink cola.
   a but b to c so d and
2. The elephant is .... than the pelican.
   a heaviest b heavier c very heavy d tallest
3. Everyone tries to .... in a competition.
   a lose b raise c travel d win
4. People in Egypt .... rice.
   a grow b draw c play d write

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

opens - yellow - garden - plants

My name's Emad. I like ❶ .... very much. I grow many plants in my ❷ .... I grow sunflowers, too. The sunflower is a big flower. It's always ❸ .... in color. It's very beautiful and useful.

4 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 The emperor lives	a. redo my homework.
2 Dolphins aren't	b. for the desert.
3 We wash the tomates	c. in a big palace.
4 I need to	d. dangerous.
	e. and cut them into pieces.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

Review 1

5 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة:

A habitat is a place where living things live and grow. Each plant lives in a special habitat. We can't grow lotus flowers in desert habitat because they need a lot of water. They grow near lakes or rivers. Farmers need agricultural habitat to grow food for us. The soil in **this** habitat is good for growing many crops.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined word "**this**" refers to .... habitat.

a rivers b agricultural c desert d lakes

2. The main idea in the passage is about ....

a habitats b houses c schools d trains

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Why can't we grow lotus flowers in the desert?

---

4. What habitat do farmers need to grow many crops?

---

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة

1. doesn't - snakes - Tarek - like.

---

2. do - live - Rhim - Where - gazelles?

---

3. grow - Why - you - plants - do?

---

7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

the sunflower is the biggest flower

---

8 Write a paragraph of TWENTY FOUR (24) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٢٤) كلمة عن:

Camels and horses

strong - milk



Theme



Myself and others

Unit 4

Where do you live?

لنطق الكلمات الجديدة التي أعلاها علامة نجمة* أنظر آخر الوحدة

أين تعيش؟







Objectives of the Unit أهداف الوحدة

1. Listen, read, research, and write about different houses and places in a town.

- يستمع الطالب ويقرأ ويقوم بعمل بحث ويكتب عن أنواع المنازل المختلفة والاماكن فى المدينة.

2. Practice making sentences with prepositions.

- يتدرب الطالب على تكوين جمل بها حروف جر.

3. Read and listen to a short story.

- يقرأ الطالب ويستمع إلى قصة قصيرة.

4. Learn about and say words with /f/ and /v/ sounds.

- يتعلم الطالب ويقول كلمات بها الصوتين /f/ و /v/.

5. Write a short article about your village or city.

- يكتب الطالب مقال قصير عن قريته أو مدينته.

6. Research and make a poster.

- يقوم الطالب بعمل بحث ويعمل بوستر.





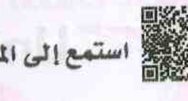




Lesson 1 ★ At home



Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:

Inside the house داخل المنزل



bedroom حجرة نوم



kitchen مطبخ



living room حجرة المعيشة



dining* room حجرة الطعام



bathroom* حمام



room حجرة



balcony بلكونة

Help your child learn about places inside the house. ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن الأماكن داخل المنزل.

Different houses المنازل المختلفة



tent خيمة

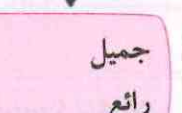
house منزل



apartment شقة



houseboat قارب للسكن



Adjectives صفات

lovely جميل	favorite مفضل
fantastic رائع	whole* بالكامل

Other words كلمات أخرى

for me بالنسبة لي	outside بالخارج
too جدًا / ايضا	inside بالداخل
cloth قماش	sounds good يبدو رائع
quietly بهدوء	building مبنى
take a shower يستحم	

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ
organize يُرتب	organized
move to (يعزّل) ينتقل إلى	moved to
relax يسترخي / يستريح	relaxed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ
do homework يعمل الواجب المنزلي	did homework
see يرى	saw
sleep ينام	slept
sit يجلس	sat

Help your child learn about different houses. ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن المنازل المختلفة.

Language Functions وظائف لغوية

1 لطلب المساعدة

Can you help me?

للموافقة: **Yes, sure.**   للرفض: **Sorry, I can't.**

2 للإقتراح

Let's + inf مصدر الفعل.

- Let's do it.



3 نتعلم أيضاً الاشكال المختلفة للمنازل وما يميز كل منزل:

house	It is big.	يكون كبير.
apartment	has a balcony	بها بلكونة
tent	made of cloth	تصنع من القماش
houseboat	on the water	يكون على الماء

Study the following

1. Look at our lovely new apartment! – انظر إلى شقتنا الجميلة الجديدة!
2. Which is your favorite room? – أي حجرة مفضلة لديك؟
3. I can see the whole street. – استطيع أن أرى الشارع بالكامل.
4. Can you help me organize the kitchen? – هل ممكن أن تساعدني في ترتيب المطبخ؟
5. That sounds good, let's do it! – هذا يبدو رائعًا. هيا نفعلها!
6. I take to my family and watch television. – اتكلم مع عائلتي واشاهد التلفاز.
7. I eat dinner with my family in the dining room. – اتناول العشاء مع عائلتي في غرفة الطعام التلفاز.
8. I take a shower in the bathroom. – استحم في الحمام.

1 Listen and read: Where are Mom and Talia? استمع واقرأ: أين الأم وتاليا؟

Mom : Look at our lovely new apartment!

Talia : It's fantastic!

Mom : Which is your favorite room?

Talia : For me it's my bedroom. I can relax and do my homework quietly.

Mom : My favorite is the living room with the balcony. I can see the whole street! Talia, can you help me organize the kitchen?

Talia : That sounds good, let's do it!

2 Listen again and answer the questions: استمع مرة أخرى واجب عن الأسئلة:

1- What are they talking about? ١- عن ماذا كانا يتحدثان؟

2- What is Mom's favorite room? Why? ٢- ما الحجرة المفضلة للأم؟ لماذا؟

----

3 Look and match: انظر وصل (كما بالمثال):

1- kitchen [c]

2- bedroom [ ]

3- bathroom [ ]

4- living room [ ]

5- dining room [ ]

6- balcony [ ]

a   b 

c   d 

e   f  

Help your child listen and answer the questions. ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويجيب عن الأسئلة.

4 Listen and write the correct room: استمع واكتب الحجرة الصحيحة :



Tapescript نص الاستماع

1- I cook food in this room. It's the ....

2- I sleep here. It's the ....

3- I talk to my family and watch television in this room. ....

4- I take a shower in this room. ....

5- I love to sit here. I can see the people in the street. ....

6- I eat dinner with my family here. ....

5 Look and read. Then read and complete: انظر واقرأ. ثم اقرأ واكمل:

1. My aunt moved to a new apartment with her family. They are very happy because they have a big balcony.



tent

2. My friend and her family live on a .... It's small, but she loves living on water.



apartment



house

3. In the desert, some people live in a .... This home is made of cloth.

4. I love living in a .... because it is a big building. My grandparents live with us. I can play outside with my brother and sister.



houseboat

Help your child read and complete. ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويكمل.



Activities

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

	True	False
1 Omar lives in a city.		
2 Omar's apartment is very big.		
3 Omar lives with his family.		
4 Omar is a teacher.		

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Some people live in a\an .... in the desert.
   a tent b houseboat c apartment d river

2. Can you .... me?
   a helps b helping c help d helped

3. I live in a .... I love living on water.
   a tent b houseboat c kitchen d desert

4. I sleep in the ....
   a kitchen b bathroom c bedroom d balcony

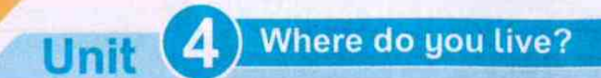
3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

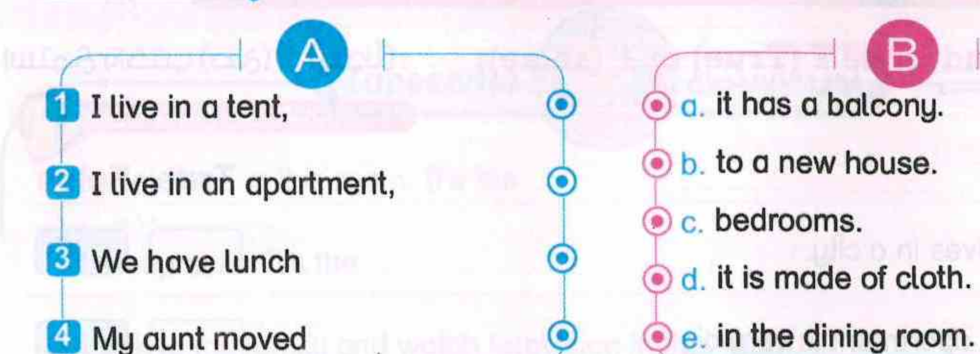
balcony - clean - favorite - because

Our family moved to a new apartment last week. It's fantastic . My ❶ .... room is the living room with the ❷ .... Yesterday I helped my mom to ❸ .... the kitchen. My sister's favorite room is the bedroom because she can relax and do her homework quietly.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.



4 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل:



A	B
1 I live in a tent,	a. it has a balcony.
2 I live in an apartment,	b. to a new house.
3 We have lunch	c. bedrooms.
4 My aunt moved	d. it is made of cloth.
	e. in the dining room.

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. do - Where - you - live?
   ---
2. room - What - your - is - favorite?
   ---
3. live - us - My - with - grandparents.
   ---
4. play - with - I - brother - can - my - outside.
   ---

6 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

i live in a big house

---

7 Write a paragraph of TWENTY FOUR (24) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٢٤) كلمة عن:

مجاب عنه آخر الوحدة

My bedroom

favorite - sleep

Lesson 2 ★ Where is it?

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:

Prepositions of place
حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان

- on على
- in في
- next to بجوار
- between بين
- under تحت
- in front of امام
- behind خلف
- above فوق / أعلى

Help your child learn about prepositions of place. ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان.

استمع إلى المفردات:



school مدرسة



post office مكتب البريد



office مكتب



supermarket سوبر ماركت





Public places
اماكن عامة



hospital مستشفى



park حديقة عامة



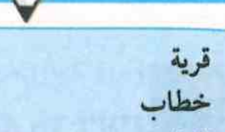


shopping mall* مركز للتسوق



museum متحف

Other words كلمات أخرى



village	قرية
letter	خطاب
the Nile	النيل
couch*	كنبة
sick	مريض

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضِ
live	يعيش	lived
work	يعمل	worked

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضِ
learn	يتعلم	learnt
send	يرسل	sent
buy	يشتري	bought

Help your child learn about public places in the city. ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن الاماكن العامة فى المدينة.

Language Functions وظائف لغوية

Prepositions of place

◉ نستخدم حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان لنحدد مكان شئ ما.

- The kitchen is next to the living room.
- The cave is in the rock.
- My house is between the tall house and the tree.

◉ لاحظ الفرق بين (on) و (above) حيث (on) تعنى ان الشئ فوق شئ آخر ويكون ملامس له ولكن (above) تعنى ان شئ يكون اعلى من شئ ولا يكون ملامس له.

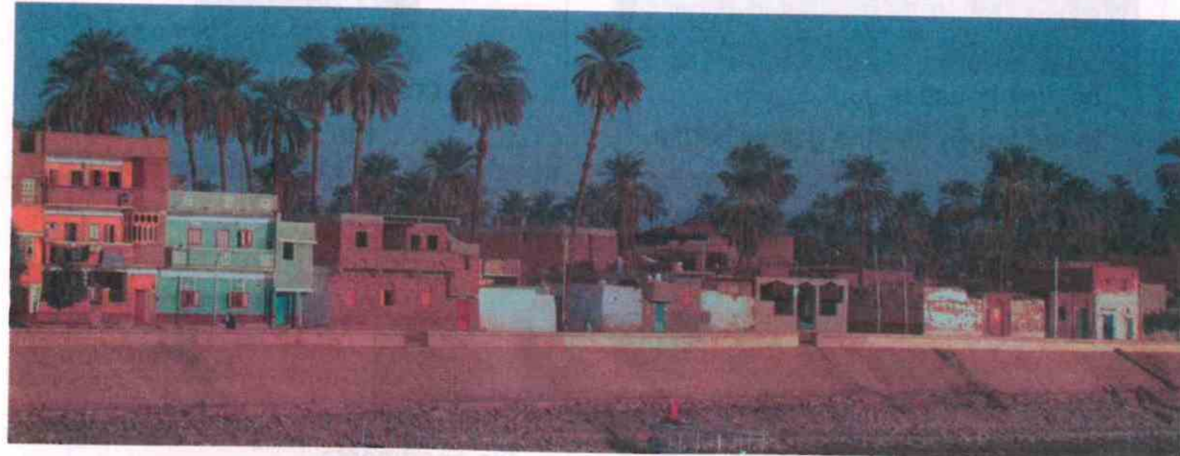
Study the following

1. We buy food at the supermarket. – نشترى الطعام من السوبر ماركت.
2. We go to hospital when we are sick. – نذهب إلى المستشفى عندما نمرض.
3. We learn there at school. – نتعلم في المدرسة.
4. We send letters at the post office. – نرسل خطابات في مكتب البريد.
5. My mom and dad work in an office. – أبي وأمي يعملان في مكتب البريد.
6. We buy clothes and shoes at the shopping mall. – نشترى ملابس وأحذية من مركز التسوق.

1 Read and listen. Answer the questions: اقرأ واستمع. وأجب عن الأسئلة:



My name's Zain. I live in a village next to the Nile. I live in a house with my family.
Our house isn't the biggest house in the village. It's between a yellow house and a brown house. There are tall trees behind the house.



- Which house does Zain live in?

....

Unit 4 Where do you live?

2 Look, listen, and number: انظر واستمع ورقم:

1- on 2- in 3- under 4- above 5- next to 6- between 7- behind 8- in front of









1

3 Look and complete the sentences: انظر واكمل الجمل:

1


The tent is .... the car.

2

There's a plant .... the couch.

3

The pink house is .... the red house and the yellow house.

4

There are 4 chairs and a table .... the balcony.

5

The trees are .... the apartments.

Help your child look and complete the sentences. ساعد طفلك ينظر ويكمل الجمل.

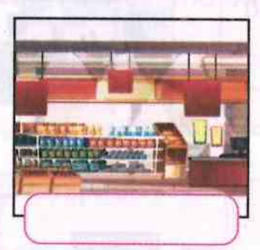
4 Look, listen and number: انظر واستمع ورقم:

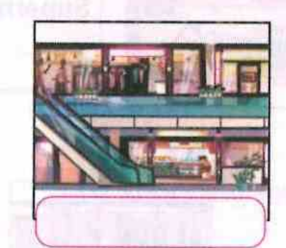
1- school	2- supermarket	3- shopping mall
4- post office	5- office	6- hospital



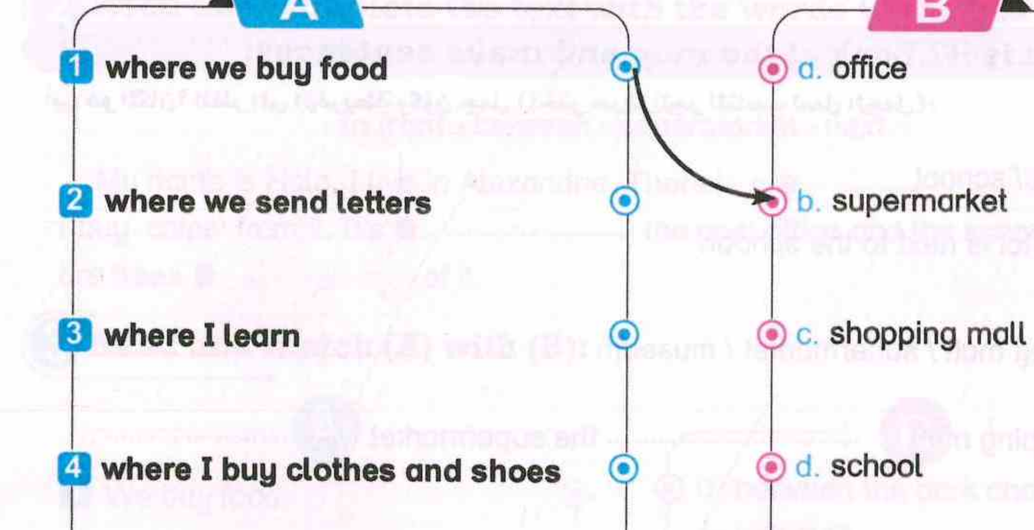


1



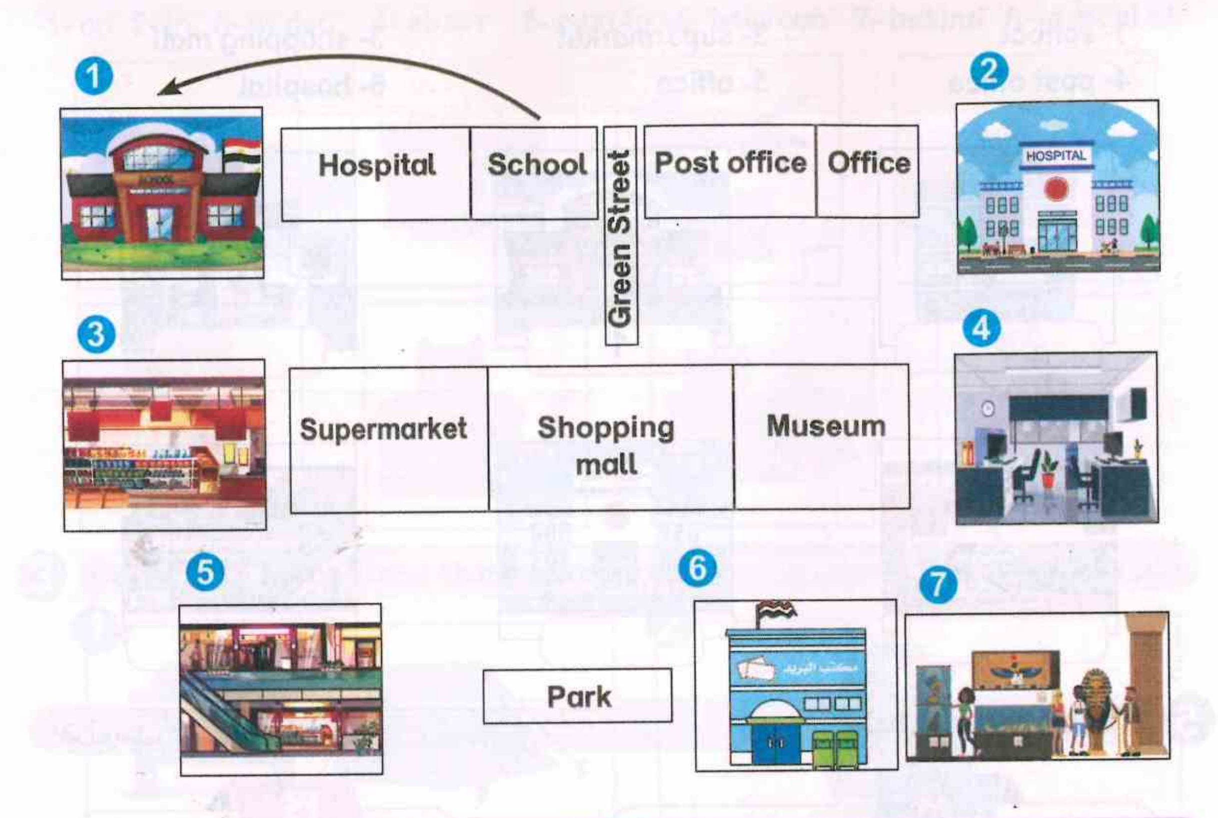
5 Read and match: اقرأ وصل:



A	B
1 where we buy food	a. office
2 where we send letters	b. supermarket
3 where I learn	c. shopping mall
4 where I buy clothes and shoes	d. school
5 where my mom and dad work	e. hospital
6 where we go when we are sick	f. post office

Help your child read and match. ساعد طفلك يقرأ ويصل.

6 Look and connect: انظر وصل (كما بالمثال):



7 Where is it? Look at the map and make sentences:

أين هو المكان؟ انظر إلى الخريطة وكون جمل (اختر حرف الجر المناسب لعمل الجمل):

1- hospital / school

The hospital is next to the school.

2- shopping mall / supermarket / museum

The shopping mall is .... the supermarket ....

3- Green Street / school / post office

....

4- the park / the shopping mall

....

Help your child make sentences with prepositions. ساعد طفلك أن يكون جمل باستخدام حروف الجر.



Activities

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. A: .... is the hospital?
   B: It's behind the park.
   a) When b) Where c) Which d) Why
2. We send letters at the ....
   a) school b) hospital c) station d) post office
3. I buy clothes and shoes at the ....
   a) office b) shopping mall c) hospital d) school
4. My sister is sick. She's going to ....
   a) hospital b) museum c) school d) shopping mall
5. There's a cat .... the chair.
   a) between b) next c) on d) of

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

in front - between - supermarket - next

My name is Hala. I live in Alexandria. There is a ❶ .... in my street. I buy chips from it. It's ❷ .... the post office and the school. There are trees ❸ .... of it.

3 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 We buy food	a. between the park and the museum.
2 The trees are in front	b. office.
3 The tent is next	c. of our house.
4 The shopping mall is	d. at the supermarket.
	e. to the car.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. mall - There's - behind - a shopping - the supermarket.
----
2. next - school - The hospital - to - is - the.
----
3. is - the - post - Where - office?
----
4. a village - live - I - The Nile - in - next to.
----

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

the park is next to the school --

6 Write an email of TWENTY FOUR (24) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب بريد إلكترونى من (٢٤) كلمة عن:



Your house

rooms - garden

To your friend Marawan. Your email address is adel@yahoo.com. Your friend's email address is marawan@gamil.com.

New Message

To -- Cc Bcc

From --

Subject --

Dear ---------,

Yours,



Giving directions

Part: 1



استمع إلى المفردات:


office مكتب




store محل / متجر

supermarket سوبر ماركت



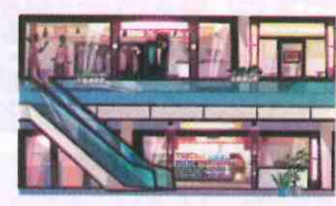


bank بنك

school مدرسة



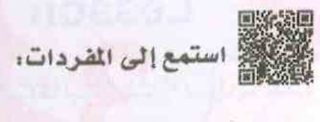
hospital مستشفى

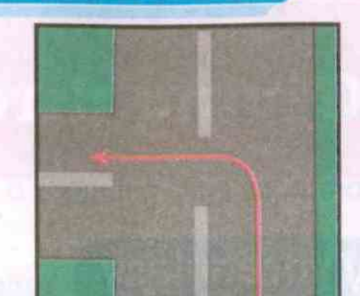

shopping mall مركز تسوق


park حديقة عامة


station محطة

Help your child learn about places in the town. ساعد طفلك ان يتعلم عن اماكن فى المدينة.

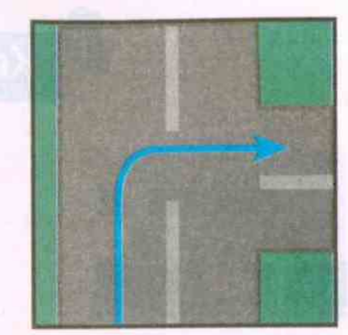




Turn left
استدر يسارًا



Go straight* ahead
سر بشكل مستقيم



Turn right
استدر يمينًا

Giving Directions
اعطاء الاتجاهات



Take the second right
خذ ثانى يمين



It's on the corner
إنها فى ركن / ناصية الشارع



Take the second left
خذ ثانى يسار

Other words كلمات أخرى

Excuse me.	اعذرنى.
Thank you.	اشكرك.
near	قريب / بالقرب من
on the other side	على الجانب الآخر
by car	بالسيارة
corner	ركن / ناصية
See you soon!	اراك قريباً!
on the right	على اليمين
on the left	على اليسار

Help your child give the directions. ساعد طفلك ان يعطى الاتجاهات.

Language Functions وظائف لغوية

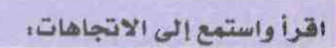
للسؤال عن المكان نستخدم

Excuse me, where's the + (المكان)?

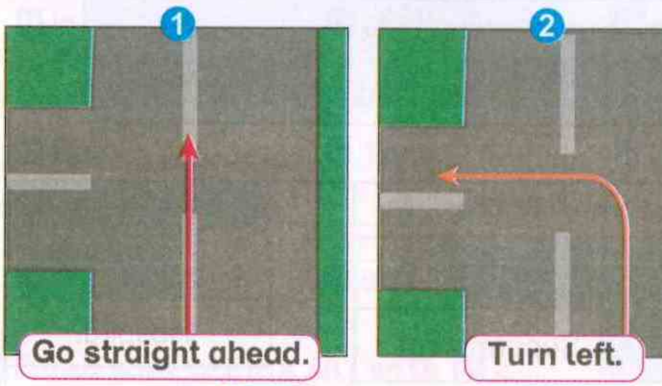
وللإجابة نستخدم جمل لاعطاء الاتجاهات:

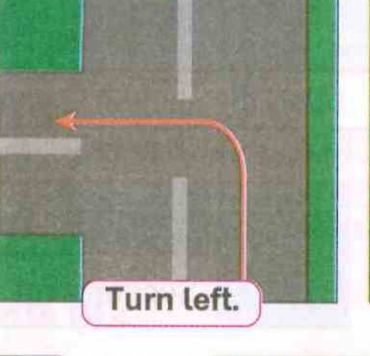
Go straight ahead.	Turn right / left.
Take the second right / left.	It's on the corner.
It's on the right / left.	

- Excuse me, where's the supermarket?
- Go straight ahead. Turn left. The supermarket is on the right.

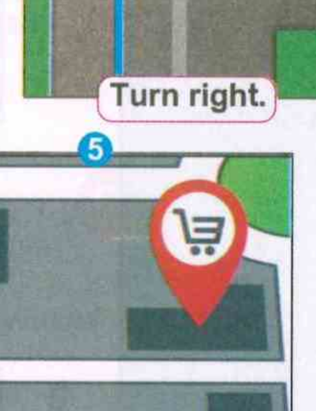
1 Read and listen to the directions: اقرأ واستمع إلى الاتجاهات:





2 Read and put the directions in the correct order: اقرأ وضع الاتجاهات فى الترتيب الصحيح:

☐ Take the second left.
☐ Thank you!
1 Excuse me, where's the post office?
☐ Turn right.
☐ Go straight ahead.
☐ It's on the corner.



Help your child order the directions. ساعد طفلك فى ترتيب الاتجاهات.

3 **Dina is going to visit her friend Fareeda. Read and follow the directions. Does Fareeda live in house A, B or C?:**

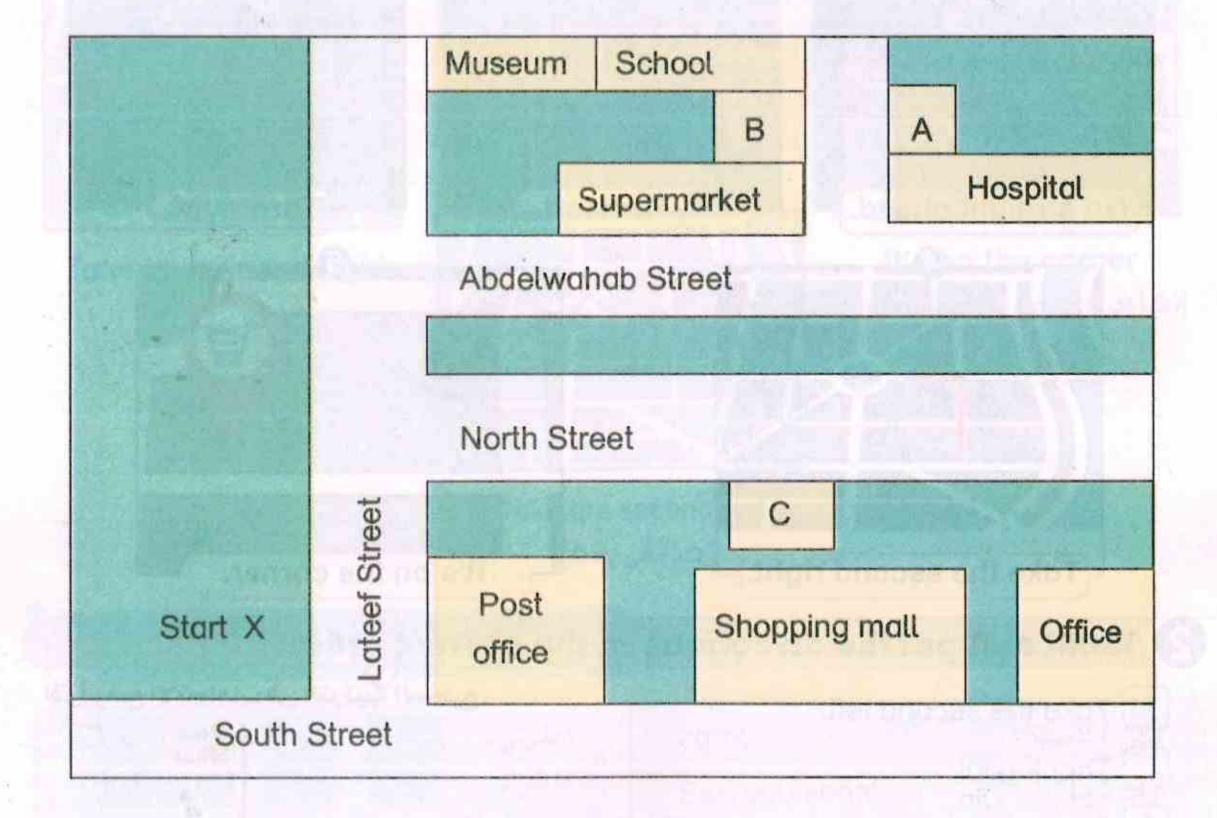
ستزور دينا صديقتها فريدة. اقرأ واتبع الاتجاهات. هل فريدة تعيش فى منزل (A, B أو C)؟

Hi Dina!

I'm so happy you are coming to my house today. Here are some directions. From the corner of South Street with Lateef Street, go straight ahead. Take the second right to Abdelwahab Street. Go straight ahead. Turn left at the supermarket. My house is between the supermarket and the school.

See you soon!

Fareeda



- Fareeda lives in house ....

Help your child read and find Fareeda's house. ساعد طفلك ان يقرأ ويجد منزل فريدة.

Activities

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. .... straight ahead.

   a Going b Go c Goes d Went

2. A: Excuse me, ... is the supermarket?
   B: It's on the left.

   a where b what c how d why

3. The post office is .... the left.

   a in b of c on d for

4. .... right. It's next to the bank.

   a Burn b Turn c Help d Take

5. The hospital is............................... the corner.

   a of b on c between d under

2 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 My town	a. museum
2 Where's	b. your village?
3 Our school is	c. in the park.
4 I play football	d. has many stores.
	e. next to the hospital.

3 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

My name's Dina. I live in a big town. There are many places in my town. My school is near my house. I walk to school every morning. There's a park next to my school. I often play football in the park with my friends. There's a supermarket near my house. I can buy food from it. My dad works in an office. He goes there by car. There's a shopping mall next to the office.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The passage is mainly about Dina's ....

a supermarket b office c room d town

2. The office is next to the ....

a park b hospital c shopping mall d post office

B. Answer the following questions:

3. How does Dina go to school?

----

4. Where does Dina play football?

----

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. bank - Where - the - is?

----

2. left - it's - Turn right - on - the.

----

3. is - on - The shopping mall - corner - the.

----

4. between - My house - the supermarket - the school - and - is.

----

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. where is your school

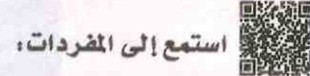
----

2. fareeda lives in a house



LIVING ON A BOAT
Pronunciation

Part: 2



استمع إلى المفردات:



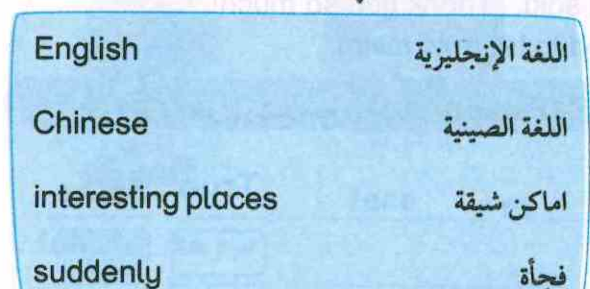
summer
الصيف



tourist boats
قوارب سياحية



the Nile
النيل



Other words كلمات أخرى

English	اللغة الإنجليزية
Chinese	اللغة الصينية
interesting places	اماكن شيقة
suddenly	فجأة
from all over the world	من جميع أنحاء العالم
one day	ذات يوم
on a boat	على قارب

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
save	ينقذ	saved
decide	يقرر	decided
smile	يبتسم	smiled
shout	يصيح	shouted
call	ينادي	called

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
meet	يقابل	met
swim	يعوم	swam
fall	يسقط	fell
know	يعرف	knew
go	يذهب	went

1 Read and listen. How did Sherif's dad help the small child?

اقرأ واستمع. كيف ساعد والد شريف الطفل الصغير؟



My friend Sherif lives on a boat in the summer. His parents work on tourist boats so he goes with them. They travel up and down the Nile.
He likes the summer very much. He sees many interesting places and he meets people from all over the world. He speaks English and Chinese with the tourists.
One day, the boat stopped and Sherif saw some children playing. Suddenly a small child fell into the river! The child shouted "Please help me!"
Sherif called his dad. Sherif's dad saw the child and jumped into the river. He swam and saved the child! The child smiled and said. "Thank you so much!"
Sherif was very happy, but he also decided to learn to swim.

2 Read again and write T (True) or F (False): اقرأ مرة اخرى وضع صح أو خطأ:

	True	False
1 Sherif lives in a city in the summer.		
2 Sherif can speak English and Chinese.		
3 The small child fell into the river.		
4 Sherif jumped into the river.		

3 Answer the following questions: اجب عن الأسئلة التالية:

1- Why is it important to help others? ١ - لماذا من المهم أن نساعد الآخرين؟

2- Do you think it's important to know how to swim? Why?
٢ - هل تعتقد أنه من المهم أن تكون قادر على السباحة؟ لماذا؟



لاحظ!

المس رقبتك باصابعك وانطق كلمة (fish) هل تحركت احبالك الصوتية؟

انطق كلمة (van) بما تشعر؟

تنقسم الاصوات الساكنة فى اللغة الانجليزية إلى voiced وهى الاصوات التى تهتز فيها الاحبال الصوتية عند نطقها مثل: (b/d/g/j/l/m/n/r/v/w/y/z/th: this)

وهناك اصوات voiceless وهى التى لا تهتز الاحبال الصوتية عند نطقها مثل: (ch/f/k/p/s/sh/t/th: thin)

★ **Listen and say:** استمع وقل





Activities



1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:
اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

speaks - Chinese - meets - tourists

My friend's father is a teacher. He likes to travel a lot. He travels to China. He can speak ❶ .... He ❷ .... people from all over the world. He meets a lot of ❸ .... and speaks English with them.

2 Read and match (A) with (B):
اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 I like the	a. English.
2 We saw some	b. at the supermarket.
3 She works	c. summer very much.
4 He speaks	d. children playing.
	e. helps us at the supermarket.

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:
اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملا صحيحة:

1. can - I - English - speak. --
2. the - Sherif's - saved - dad - child. --
3. work - My - boats - tourist - parents - on. --
4. the river - fell - The - child - small - into. --

4 Write a paragraph of TWENTY FOUR (24) words using the following guiding elements:
اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٢٤) كلمة عن:

مجاب عنه آخر الوحدة

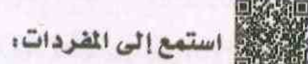
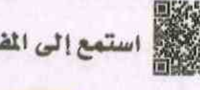
Living on a boat

tourist boat - summer

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

Lessons 4&5 ★ Writing ★ Project

Key vocabulary



استمع إلى المفردات:


Hurghada* Beach
شاطئ الغردقة




bazaar
سوق شرقى (بازار)


Sahl Hasheesh
منطقة سهل حشيش


Sahara Desert
الصحراء الكبرى


The Red Sea
البحر الأحمر

Other words كلمات أخرى

in the east of	فى شرق
interesting	شيق
tourist	سائح
safaris	رحلات السفارى

photo	صورة فوتوغرافية
map	خريطة
diagram	رسم بيانى

Language Functions وظائف لغوية

نتعلم فى هذا الدرس كيف تكتب عن المكان الذى تعيش فيه.

Hi, I'm (اسم). I live in a city / village called (اسم مدينتك / قريتك). It is in (south / east of) (north / west of) (مكان المدينة).
About (عدد الناس) people live here. There is a (شئ يميز المكان). There are lots of (أشياء تميز المكان). We don't have .... but we have ....

Hi, I'm Hamza. I live in a city called Siwa. It is in west of Egypt. About 35 thousand people live here. There are lots of palm trees here. We don't have skyscrapers, but we have nice houses.

Help your child learn about Hurghada. ساعد طفلك يتعلم عن مدينة «الغردقة».

Study the following

1. I live in a city called Hurghada.
   - اعيش فى مدينة تسمى الغردقة.
2. Hurghada is in the east of Egypt.
   - تقع الغردقة فى شرق مصر.
3. It's a big city and about 190,000 people live here.
   - إنها مدينة كبيرة ويعيش بها حوالى ١٩٠,٠٠٠ شخص.
4. There is the Sahara Desert where lots of tourists go on safaris.
   - يوجد بها الصحراء الكبرى حيث يذهب كثير من السائحين فى رحلات السفارى.
5. Sahl Hasheesh has beautiful houses and interesting bazaars.
   - يوجد فى سهل حشيش منازل جميلة وبزارات رائعة.

1 Read Mariam's article about Hurghada: اقرأ مقال مريم عن الغردقة:

Hurghada - My town



Mariam

Hi, I'm Mariam. I live in a city called Hurghada. It's in the east of Egypt on the Red Sea. It's a big city and about 190,000 people live here. In Hurghada, there's a **beach** and there are lots of interesting things to do. There is the **Sahara Desert** where lots of tourists go on safaris. We have **Sahl Hasheesh** in the south of Hurghada. It has some beautiful houses and interesting **bazaars**.



1. Hurghada beach
2. Sahl Hasheesh, Egypt
3. Sahara Desert

2 Read again and complete the table: اقرأ مرة أخرى واكمل الجدول:

City	Hurghada
Where is it?	
How many people live there?	
Interesting things in Hurghada	

3 How does Mariam make her text interesting? Check the items she uses

كيف جعلت مريم النص الخاص بها شيقًا؟ افحص ما تم استخدامه.

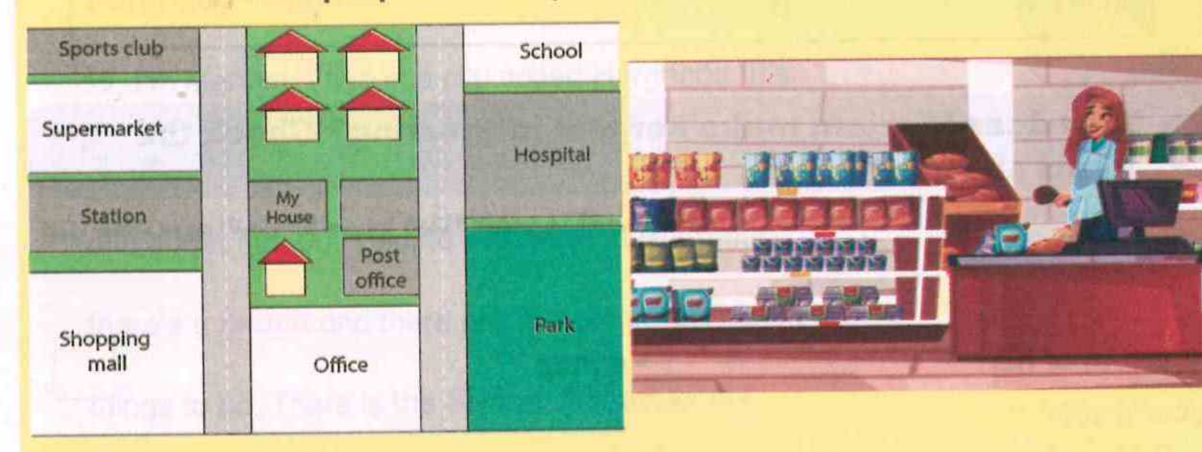
- a photo of her ☐
- a map ☐
- drawings ☐
- a diagram ☐
- photos ☐
- interesting facts ☐

4 Think about your village or city. Do research and complete the table: فكر في قريتك أو مدينتك: قم بعمل بحث واكمل الجدول:

City/Village	
Where is it?	
How many people live there?	
Interesting things in my city/ village	

5 Read and answer: اقرأ وأجب:

The people who help us: the supermarket worker



This is Mona. She works at the supermarket near my house. My family and I see her every week when we buy food. Mona checks the food is fresh. She helps us when we can't find something. She is very kind and happy.



Activities

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

	True	False
1 Mona works at a supermarket.		
2 Mona helps people find something in the supermarket.		
3 Mona checks the food is fresh.		
4 Mona is an unkind girl.		

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. A: .... lives in Hurghada?
   B: My friend Mariam.
   a When b Who c Where d Why
2. I live in a city .... Hurghada.
   a called b calls c calling d call
3. Tourists can go on .... in the Sahara Desert.
   a sleeping b safaris c swimming d diving
4. We can buy beautiful things at the ....
   a bazaars b tourists c photos d gardens

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

bazaars - tourists - safaris - interesting

I live in Giza. There are a lot of 1 .... places you can visit. Many 2 .... visit the Pyramids and the Sphinx. There are many stores and 3 .... in Giza.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

4 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 I live in a city	a. interesting things.
2 How many people	b. live there?
3 Hurghada is in the	c. go on safaris.
4 Lots of tourists	d. called Hurghada.
	e. east of Egypt.

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. live - Hurghada - I - called - in - a city. ----------------
2. Egypt - of - in - It's - east - the. ----------------
3. very - and - is - kind - She - happy. ----------------
4. is - fresh - Mona - the food - checks. ----------------

6 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

hurghada is a big city ----------------

7 Write a paragraph of TWENTY FOUR (24) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٢٤) كلمة عن:



Hurghada

east - the Sahara Desert



Review

Inside the house داخل المنزل


room حجرة


balcony بلكونة


bedroom حجرة نوم


living room حجرة المعيشة


kitchen مطبخ


bathroom حمام


dining room حجرة الطعام



Different houses المنازل المختلفة


house منزل


apartment شقة


tent خيمة


houseboat قارب للسكن

Public places اماكن عامة


post office مكتب البريد


school مدرسة


office مكتب

supermarket سوبر ماركت

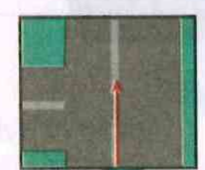


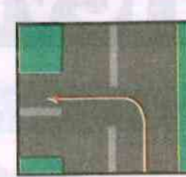
hospital مستشفى

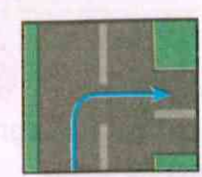

shopping mall مركز للتسوق

Help your child review Unit 4. ساعد طفلك ان يراجع الوحدة الرابعة.

Giving Directions اعطاء الاتجاهات


Go straight ahead
سر بشكل مستقيم


Turn left
استدر يسارًا


Turn right
استدر يمينًا


Take the second right
خذ ثانى يمين


It's on the corner
إنها فى ركن الشارع


Take the second left
خذ ثانى يسار

Language Functions وظائف لغوية

1 السؤال عن المكان نستخدم

Excuse me, where's the + (المكان)?

وللإجابة نستخدم جمل لاعطاء الاتجاهات:

Go straight ahead.	Turn right / left.
Take the second right / left.	It's on the corner.
It's on the right / left.	

- Excuse me, where's the post office?
- Go straight ahead. Turn right. The post office is on the corner.

2 Prepositions of place حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان

نستخدم حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان لنحدد مكان شيء ما.

- The kitchen is **next to** the living room.
- The cave is **in** the rock.
- My house is **between** the tall house and the tree.

ملاحظات على نطق بعض الكلمات

1. لنطق كلمة (**whole**) حرف (**w**) لا ينطق أي (**silent**).
2. لنطق كلمة (**dining**) انطق حرف (**i**) الأول ينطق مثل (**i**) كما فى كلمة (**kite**).
3. لنطق كلمة (**bathroom**) حرفى (**th**) ينطقان مثل (**ث**) فى اللغة العربية .
4. في نطق كلمة (**couch**) المقطع الصوتي (**ou**) ينطق كما في كلمة (**out**).
5. لنطق كلمة (**mall**) المقطع الصوتي (**all**) ينطق مثل نطق كلمة (**fall**) حيث حرف (**a**) ينطق مثل حرف (**o**).
6. لا تنطق حرفى (**gh**) فى كلمة (**straight**) .
7. لنطق كلمة (**Hurghada**) حرفى (**gh**) ينطقان مثل (**ج**) فى اللغة العربية.

مهارات الكتابة

Writing Skills

Write a paragraph / an email of TWENTY FOUR (24) words.

Answers to Paragraphs/ emails

Lesson 1
My bedroom

1 My house has a lot of rooms. My favorite room is the bedroom. I sleep in it. I read stories there. I like my house very much.

Lesson 2
My house

2

New Message

To	marawan@gmail.com.
From	adel@yahoo.com
Subject	My house

Dear Marawan,

How are you? I want to tell you about my house. I live in a big house. It has a lot of rooms. I love it because it's big. I can play outside my house. My house has a beautiful garden. I watch TV in the living room.

Yours,

Adel

Lesson 3
Hurghada

3 Hurghada is in the east of Egypt. You can visit the Hurghada beach. About 190,000 people live there. The Sahara Desert there is very interesting. Tourists go on safaris in the Sahara Desert.

Lessons 4&5
Living on a boat

4 My dad works on a tourist boat. He travels up and down the Nile. He likes the summer. He sees many interesting places. He speaks English, too.

Al-Azhar Exercises



الأسئلة الخاصة بالأزهر الشريف

A- Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer: استمع وأختر:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Ahmed lives in a .... village. (small - big - fat)
2. Ahmed's school is next to the .... (park - farm - hospital)

B- Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialog: أقرأ وأكمل:

front - house - outside

A : Where do your grandparents live?
B : They live in a ------------------------------------ .
A : Is there a garden in ------------------------ of the house?
B : Yes, I can play ------------------------ with my brother.

C- Reading Comprehension

3 Read and choose the correct answer: أقرأ واختر:

My name is Hend. I'm in grade four. I live in a big house with my family. We have three bedrooms and two bathrooms. My mum cooks food in the kitchen. I watch TV in the living room. My favorite room is my bedroom. I like to read and do my homework in my bedroom. I like to help my father at the farm. He grows tomatoes and onions for us.

Choose the correct answer:

1. Hend is in grade .... (five - four - six)
2. Hend lives in a big .... (house - apartment - kitchen)
3. Hend likes to do her homework in the .... (bathroom - kitchen - bedroom)
4. Hend's father grows .... and onions. (mangoes - tomatoes - potatoes)
5. Hend's house has three .... (bedrooms - bathrooms - kitchens)

D- Vocabulary and Structures

4 Choose the right answer from a, b, or c: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة

1. Sherif .... English and Chinese.
   a travels b meets c speaks
2. The office is in .... of the school.
   a next b front c above
3. Take the second ....
   a right b write c light
4. It's next .... the post office.
   a on b to c too
5. Hurghada is in the .... of Egypt.
   a left b corner c east

E- Writing

5 Rearrange the words to make correct sentences: اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. The hospital - next to - is - the school. ------------------------
2. does - do - What - she? ------------------------
3. people - live - How many - there? ------------------------
4. works - at - supermarket - She - the. ------------------------

6 Write a paragraph of Four (4) sentences about: اكتب فقرة انشائية من (٤) جمل عن:

Your new apartment

----

on Unit 4 Activity



1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

	True	False
1 Nada loves her farm.		
2 Nada's town is small.		
3 Nada's town has schools.		
4 Nada's town is a good place to live in.		

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. **A:** .... is the bank? **B:** It's next to the hospital.
   a Where b What c When d Why
2. People in the desert live in a ....
   a boat b tent c balcony d ship
3. The hospital is .... to the post office.
   a on b behind c in front d next
4. It .... a lot of rooms.
   a have b has c having d are

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

teacher - next - like - mall

I live in a small town. My school is ❶ .... to a big park. My father is a ❷ .... He is very kind. He teaches English. Students ❸ .... him very much.

4 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 There are chairs	a. right.
2 Turn right,	b. it's on the corner.
3 A school is a place	c. where I can learn.
4 Take the second	d. in the balcony.
	e. there's a park.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

5 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

My friend, Mariam lives in Hurghada. It's a beautiful city in the east of Egypt. In Hurghada there's a beach and there are lots of cool stores and restaurants. There is also the Sahara Desert where lots of tourists go on safaris. Sahl Hasheesh is in the south of Hurghada. It has some beautiful houses and interesting bazaars.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The main idea of the passage is about ....
   a Cairo b Hurghada c Luxor d Alexandria
2. Sahl Hasheesh is in the .... of Hurghada.
   a north b south c east d west

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Where does Mariam live?

   ----
4. What does Sahl Hasheesh have?

   ----

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. Dad's - room - **What** - favorite - is?

   ----
2. live - grandparents - **My** - a tent - in.

   ----
3. is - the - **The couch** - in - room - living.

   ----

7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للاتى:

I can speak english --

8 Write a paragraph of TWENTY FOUR (24) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٢٤) كلمة عن:

Your town

Alexandria - clean

Theme 2



Myself and others

Unit 5



Where do you work?

أين تعمل؟

لنطق الكلمات الجديدة التي أعلاها علامة نجمة* أنظر آخر الوحدة







Objectives of the Unit أهداف الوحدة

1. Listen, read, and write about workers in my community.
- يستمع الطالب ويقرأ ويكتب عن العاملين فى مجتمعه.
2. Learn about electricity.
- يتعلم الطالب عن الكهرباء.
3. Practice using this, that, these, those.
- يتدرب الطالب على استخدام (هذا / هذه - ذلك / تلك - هؤلاء - أولئك).
4. Practice word stress on two-syllable words.
- يتدرب الطالب على نطق المقاطع المشددة فى الكلمات المكونة من مقطعين صوتيين.
5. Think and write about the pros and cons of different jobs.
- يفكر الطالب ويكتب عن مميزات وعيوب الوظائف المختلفة.
6. Make a report about workers in my community.
- يقوم الطالب بعمل تقرير عن العاملين فى مجتمعه.





Lesson 1

★ Listening

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:


electrician* كهربائي


plumber* سباك


garbage* collector عامل نظافة


mail carrier ساعي بريد


mechanic* ميكانيكي


bus driver سائق اتوبيس

Other words كلمات أخرى

safe	آمن
pipe	ماسورة
wait	ينتظر
collect	يجمع

garbage = trash	قمامة
faucet*	حنفية
parcel	طرد / رزمة

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
deliver	يُوصل	delivered
fix	يصلح	fixed
connect	يربط/ يوصل	connected
drip	ينقط	dripped
wait	ينتظر	waited
collect	يجمع	collected
hope	يأمل	hoped

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
forget	ينسى	forgot
take out	يُخرج / يُزيل	took out
drive	يقود	drove
put out	يضع شيء في مكانه	put out

Study the following

◉ نتعلم فى هذا الدرس عن الوظائف المختلفة وما تقدمه كل وظيفة.

Job الوظيفة	Description الوصف
electrician كهربائى	- loves making things work. يحب أن يجعل الأشياء تعمل.
plumber سباك	- connects your home to water. يوصل منزلك بالماء. - fixes pipes and faucets. يصلح المواسير والحنفيات.
garbage collector عامل النظافة	- takes away all the garbage. يأخذ كل القمامة. - works hard to collect the trash. يعمل بجد لجمع القمامة.
mail carrier ساعى البريد	- delivers your letters and parcels. يوصل خطاباتك وطرودك.
mechanic ميكانيكى	- fixes cars or buses. يصلح السيارات أوالاتوبيسات.
bus driver سائق الاتوبيس	- drives you to many different places. يوصلك لأماكن مختلفة. - helps you get to school on time. يساعدك أن تصل إلى المدرسة فى الوقت المحدد.

➤ تعلم ايضاً الاجابة عن اسئلة تخص الوظائف.

1. Which job is the most interesting? Why? أى وظيفة هى الأكثر مُتعة؟ لماذا؟
   - I think being a bus driver is the most interesting job. You drive to many different places and help lots of people.
2. Which job is the most difficult? Why? أى وظيفة هى الأصعب؟ ولماذا؟
   - I think being an electrician is the most difficult. Because you can get an electric shock.

Lesson 1

1 Listen and read. What is Dad's job? استمع واقرأ:

استمع إلى النص:

Zeinab : Dad, do you like your job?

Dad : Yes, I love being a plumber. Sometimes it's wet(1) and messy(2) because I have to fix pipes and faucets.

Zeinab : Did you want to do a different job when you were young?

Dad : Yes, I wanted to be a bus driver or a mechanic.

Zeinab : So what happened?

Dad : Well, I don't really like driving(3)! I was much better at fixing pipes and faucets than cars!

Zeinab : What about you, Youssef? Do you like being an electrician?

Youssef : Yes, I love making things work!

Dad : Oh look, here's the mail carrier! I hope he has my parcel...

Zeinab : And there's the garbage collector! Oh, I forgot to take out the trash! Wait please ...

Arabic Meaning
١- رطب - مبلل
٢- فوضوى
٣- القيادة

2 Read again and complete the sentences with words from Exercise 1:

اقرأ مرة أخرى وأكمل الجمل بالكلمات من التمرين رقم (١).

1. When he was young, Dad wanted to be a ______________ or a ______________.
2. Youssef is an ______________.
3. The ______________ arrives as they are talking.
4. Zeinab forgot to put the trash out for the ______________.
5. If you have a problem with pipes or faucets in your house, you need a ______________.

Help your child listen and answer the questions. ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويجيب عن الأسئلة.

3 Listen and say. Then write: استمع وقل ثم أكتب:

bus driver - electrician - garbage collector
mail carrier - mechanic - plumber

1 
electrician

2 
----

3 
----

4 
----

5 
----

6 
----

4 What do you think? ماذا تعتقد؟

1. Which job is the most interesting? Why? أي عمل هو الأكثر إثارة؟ لماذا؟
----
2. Which job is the most difficult? Why? أي وظيفة هي الاصعب؟ لماذا؟



I think being a bus driver is the most interesting job. You drive to many different places and help lots of people.

Did you know? هل تعلم؟

Cairo produces around 20,000,000 tons of garbage every year. Garbage collectors work hard to collect it all.

هل تعلم أن القاهرة تنتج ٢٠,٠٠٠,٠٠٠ طن من القمامة سنويًا. يعمل عمال النظافة بجد لجمع هذه القمامة.

Activities

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

(الشرقية - فاقوس ٢٠٢٣)

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

	True	False
1 A mechanic fixes buses and cars.		
2 An electrician doesn't love making things work.		
3 A garbage collector collects the trash.		
4 A mail carrier delivers your letters and parcels.		

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

(القاهرة - عابدين ٢٠٢٣)

1. A / an .... drives the bus.
   a electrician b farmer c plumber d bus driver
2. We need a mechanic to .... our car.
   a deliver b help c fix d play
3. A mail carrier delivers your ....
   a parcels b faucets c electricity d water
4. A garbage collector .... the trash.
   a makes b builds c draws d collects

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

(المنوفية - تلا ٢٠٢٣)

loves - pipes - useful - delivers

There are many different jobs in our country. These jobs are very ❶ .... Many people help us in our homes. For example, an electrician ❷ .... making things work. A plumber fixes the ❸ .... A garbage collector collects the trash.

4 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 An electrician loves	a. letters and parcels.
2 A plumber fixes	b. fixes your car.
3 A bus driver	c. drives the bus.
4 A mechanic	d. the pipes and faucets.
	e. making things work.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:
اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. collects - A garbage - trash - collector - the.

----

2. A bus - drives - driver - bus - the.

----

3. fixes - faucets - A plumber - and - the pipes.

----

4. carrier - delivers - A mail - parcels.

----

6 Write an email of TWENTY-FOUR (24) words using the following guiding elements:
اكتب إيميل من (٢٤) كلمة عن:

مجاب عنه آخر الوحدة



pipes - connects

To your friend Ayman. Your email address is osama@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is ayman@gmail.com

New Message

To ------------------------------ Cc Bcc

From ------------------------------

Subject ------------------------------

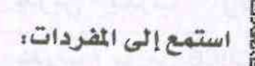
Dear ....,

Yours,



IS IT NEAR OR FAR?
Electricity








socket (بريزة) مقبس


electricity كهرباء


electrician كهربائي


plug فيشة


electric shock صدمة كهربائية


lightning برق


storm عاصفة


light ضوء

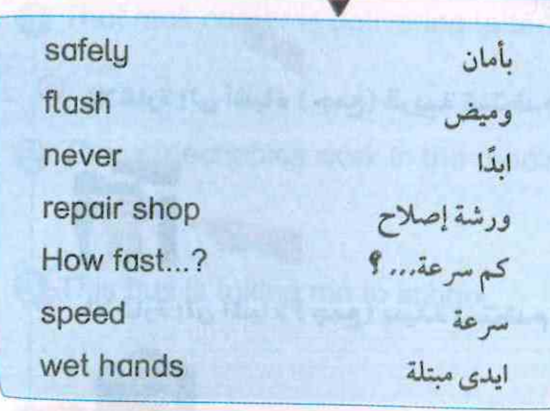

parcel طرد


tools أدوات


trash قمامة

Other words كلمات أخرى

safely	بأمان	dry	جاف
flash	وميض	save electricity	يوفر الكهرباء
never	ابدًا	interviewer	محاور
repair shop	ورشة إصلاح	near	قريب
How fast...?	كم سرعة...؟	far	بعيد
speed	سرعة	close to	قريب من
wet hands	ايدى مبتلة		



Help your child learn about electricity. ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن الكهرباء.

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة		Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ	Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ
study يدرس - يتدرب	studied	become يصبح	became
practice يتدرب / يمارس	practiced	burn يحرق / يحترق	burnt
control يتحكم	controlled	put يضع	put
touch يلمس	touched	get يحصل على	got

Grammar قواعد لغوية

1 لاعطاء امر بفعل شيء ابدا الجملة بـ

Inf / Always + inf.

- Wash your hand. / Always wash your hands.

2 لاعطاء امر بعدم فعل شيء نبدا بـ

Don't + inf / Never + inf.

- Don't make noise. / Never make noise.

3 This, That, These, Those

◉ للاشارة إلى شيء مفرد قريب (يعد أو لا يعد) نستخدم (this) بمعنى (هذا / هذه).

- This is the socket the electrician is fixing.



◉ للاشارة إلى شيء مفرد بعيد (يعد أو لا يعد) نستخدم (that) بمعنى (ذلك / تلك).



- That's the water dripping from the faucet.

◉ للاشارة إلى أشياء (جمع) قريبة نستخدم (These) بمعنى (هؤلاء).



- These are the plumber's tools.



◉ للاشارة إلى أشياء (جمع) بعيدة نستخدم (Those) بمعنى (أولئك).

- Those are the mail carrier's parcels.







لاحظ

عند اختيار This / That / These / Those نحدد هل الشيء مفرد أو جمع إذا كان مفرد نختار إما (This أو That) وإذا كان جمع نختار (These أو Those).

- ثانياً: نحدد إذا كان قريب أو بعيد . إذا كان قريب (near) نختار (This / These) والبعيد (far) نختار (That / Those).

Study the following

1. Never touch anything electrical with wet hands. - لا تلمس أي شيء كهربي ويديك مبتلة.
2. Never put anything into a socket. - لا تضع أي شيء في البريزة.
3. Only use plugs. - استخدم الفيشة فقط.
4. Always make sure your hands are dry before you touch anything electrical. - تأكد دائما أن يديك جافة قبل أن تلمس شيء كهربي.
5. Electricity travels very fast. - الكهرباء تنتقل بسرعة شديدة.
6. Electricity is very dangerous. - الكهرباء خطيرة جدًا.
7. Electricity can burn us. - الكهرباء يمكن أن تحرقنا.
8. If we get an electric shock. We can't control our bodies. - إذا تعرضنا لصدمة كهربية لا يمكننا التحكم في أجسادنا.

1 Look, read, and match the sentences to the pictures:

انظر واقرأ وصل الجمل بالصور:

1. That mail carrier is delivering letters.
2. These mechanics work in the repair shop.
3. This bus is taking me to school.
4. Those drivers are driving the new buses.



(a)

(b)



(c)



(d)

Unit 5 Where do you work?

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة			Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة		
Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ	Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
study	يدرس - يتدرب	studied	become	يصبح	became
practice	يتدرب / يمارس	practiced	burn	يحرق / يحترق	burnt
control	يتحكم	controlled	put	يضع	put
touch	يلمس	touched	get	يحصل على	got

Grammar قواعد لغوية

1 لاعطاء امر بفعل شيء ابدا الجملة بـ

Inf / Always + inf.

- Wash your hand. / Always wash your hands.

2 لاعطاء امر بعدم فعل شيء نبدا بـ

Don't + inf / Never + inf.

- Don't make noise. / Never make noise.

3 This, That, These, Those

◉ للاشارة إلى شيء مفرد قريب (يعد أو لا يعد) نستخدم (this) بمعنى (هذا / هذه).

- This is the socket the electrician is fixing.

◉ للاشارة إلى شيء مفرد بعيد (يعد أو لا يعد) نستخدم (that) بمعنى (ذلك / تلك).

- That's the water dripping from the faucet.



◉ للاشارة إلى أشياء (جمع) قريبة نستخدم (These) بمعنى (هؤلاء).

- These are the plumber's tools.

◉ للاشارة إلى أشياء (جمع) بعيدة نستخدم (Those) بمعنى (أولئك).

- Those are the mail carrier's parcels.





لاحظ

عند اختيار This / That / These / Those نحدد هل الشيء مفرد أو جمع إذا كان مفرد نختار إما (This أو That) وإذا كان جمع نختار (These أو Those).

- ثانياً: نحدد إذا كان قريب أو بعيد. إذا كان قريب (near) نختار (This / These) والبعيد (far) نختار (That / Those).

Study the following

1. **Never touch anything electrical with wet hands.** - لا تلمس أي شيء كهربي ويديك مبتلة.
2. **Never put anything into a socket.** - لا تضع أي شيء في البريزة.
3. **Only use plugs.** - استخدم الفيشة فقط.
4. **Always make sure your hands are dry before you touch anything electrical.** - تأكد دائما أن يديك جافة قبل أن تلمس شيء كهربي.
5. **Electricity travels very fast.** - الكهرباء تنتقل بسرعة شديدة.
6. **Electricity is very dangerous.** - الكهرباء خطيرة جداً.
7. **Electricity can burn us.** - الكهرباء يمكن أن تحرقنا.
8. **If we get an electric shock. We can't control our bodies.** - إذا تعرضنا لصدمة كهربية لا يمكننا التحكم في أجسادنا.

1 Look, read, and match the sentences to the pictures:

انظر واقرأ وصل الجمل بالصور:

1. That mail carrier is delivering letters.
2. These mechanics work in the repair shop.
3. This bus is taking me to school.
4. Those drivers are driving the new buses.



(a)



(b)



(c)





(d)

2 Complete the sentences: أكمل الجمل:

That - These - This - Those



1. Can you see? .... 's the mail carrier. (far)



2. .... is my aunt. Her name is Amira. She's a teacher. (near)



3. .... children are going to school. (near)



4. .... children are watching TV. (far)

3 Change the sentences into plural: حول الجمل إلى صيغ الجمع:

1. This is the faucet in my bathroom.
   These are the faucets in our bathrooms.
2. That is the mechanic who fixed my car.
   ----
3. This is the garbage collector who collects our trash.
   ----
4. That is the plumber who came to our house.
   ----

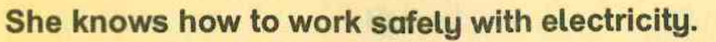
4 Read the interview quickly. Then answer the questions:
اقرأ المقابلة سريعاً ثم اجب عن الأسئلة:

- **Answer the questions:**

1. Why is electricity dangerous?
   ----
2. Is it easy to become an electrician?

Help your child learn about workers in his community. ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن العاملين فى مجتمعه.

Amira the electrician استمع إلى النص:



This is Amira, she's an electrician. She studied and practiced for three years before she became an electrician.
She knows how to work safely with electricity.

Interviewer : Tell us something interesting about electricity.

Amira : Did you know, electricity travels very fast, close to the speed of light! In a storm we sometimes see a flash of lightning. That flash has enough electricity for 1,000 families for a year!

Interviewer : Is electricity dangerous?



Amira : Yes, very dangerous. If we get an electric shock, we can't control our bodies. It can also burn us.

Interviewer : How can we use electricity safely?

Amira : Never touch anything electrical with wet hands. Never put anything into a socket, only use plugs.

5 Read the interview again. Answer the questions: اقرأ وأكمل الجمل:

1. How fast can electricity travel?
   ----
2. How can you use electricity safely at your home?
   ----

6 Read and complete the sentences: اقرأ وأكمل الجمل:



- Never touch anything electrical with.. hands.
- Always make sure your hands are .... before you touch anything electrical.

Activities



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. .... children are watching TV.
   a That b This c Those d Then
2. Look, ... bird is flying.
   a these b that c those d they
3. Those .... are working in the repair shop.
   a mechanics b builders c mail carriers d teachers
4. .... is the garbage collector who collects our trash.
   a These b Those c That d Than
5. Don't touch anything electrical with .... hands.
   a wet b dry c dirty d clean
6. Use only .... into a socket.
   a lights b bodies c plugs d computers

2 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 Why is	a. your hands.
2 Electricity travels	b. into a socket.
3 Never put anything	c. are watching TV.
4 Those children	d. very fast.
	e. electricity dangerous?

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

My brother Ziad wants to be an electrician. Electricity is very dangerous, so he will study and practice it for years. He always buys books about electricity. He learns a lot of information about electricity. He learns that electricity travels very fast, close to the speed of light. In a storm we sometimes see a flash of lightning. That flash has enough electricity for 1,000 families for a year.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Ziad wants to be a/an ....
   a plumber b electrician c farmer d mail carrier
2. We see a flash of lightning in a ....
   a storm b trash c parcel d socket

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What does Ziad buy?

----

4. How fast can electricity travel?

----

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. are - tools - These - plumber's - the.

----

2. mail - That - is - carrier - parcels - delivering.

----

3. is - She - electrician - an.

----

4. with - touch - Never - wet hands - anything - electrical.

----

5. electricity - Why - dangerous - is?

----

6. make - Always - sure - are - hands - your - dry.

----

5 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

is electricity dangerous

Activities



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. .... children are watching TV.
   a That b This c Those d Then
2. Look, ... bird is flying.
   a these b that c those d they
3. Those .... are working in the repair shop.
   a mechanics b builders c mail carriers d teachers
4. .... is the garbage collector who collects our trash.
   a These b Those c That d Than
5. Don't touch anything electrical with .... hands.
   a wet b dry c dirty d clean
6. Use only .... into a socket.
   a lights b bodies c plugs d computers

2 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 Why is	a. your hands.
2 Electricity travels	b. into a socket.
3 Never put anything	c. are watching TV.
4 Those children	d. very fast.
	e. electricity dangerous?

3 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

My brother Ziad wants to be an electrician. Electricity is very dangerous, so he will study and practice it for years. He always buys books about electricity. He learns a lot of information about electricity. He learns that electricity travels very fast, close to the speed of light. In a storm we sometimes see a flash of lightning. That flash has enough electricity for 1,000 families for a year.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Ziad wants to be a/an ....
   a plumber b electrician c farmer d mail carrier
2. We see a flash of lightning in a ....
   a storm b trash c parcel d socket

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What does Ziad buy?
   ----
4. How fast can electricity travel?
   ----

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. are - tools - **These** - plumber's - the.
   ----
2. mail - **That** - is - carrier - parcels - delivering.
   ----
3. is - **She** - electrician - an.
   ----
4. with - touch - **Never** - wet hands - anything - electrical.
   ----
5. electricity - **Why** - dangerous - is?
   ----
6. make - **Always** - sure - are - hands - your - dry.
   ----

5 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

is electricity dangerous

Lesson 3 ★ Three cousins

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



architect* مهندس معماري

experiment يجرب / يختبر



screwdriver* مفك

blocks لعبة المكعبات

cell phone تليفون محمول

tape measure شريط قياس



radio راديو



electrician كهربائي

fan مروحة

teacher مدرس

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

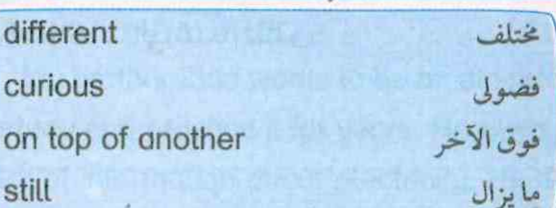
Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
open	يفتح	opened
explain	يشرح / يفسر	explained
call	يتصل	called

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
get angry	يغضب	got angry
put	يضع	put
learn	يتعلم	learned/ learnt

Other words كلمات أخرى



different	مختلف	learn about	يتعلم عن
curious	فضولي	sometimes	أحيانًا
on top of another	فوق الآخر	patient*	صبور
still	ما يزال	adult	شخص راشد (بالغ)

Help your child learn new words. ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم كلمات جديدة.

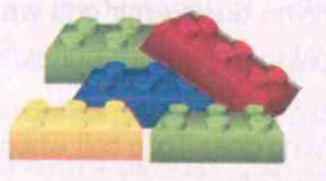
1 **Look, listen, and say:** انظر واستمع وقل:



screwdriver



tape measure



blocks

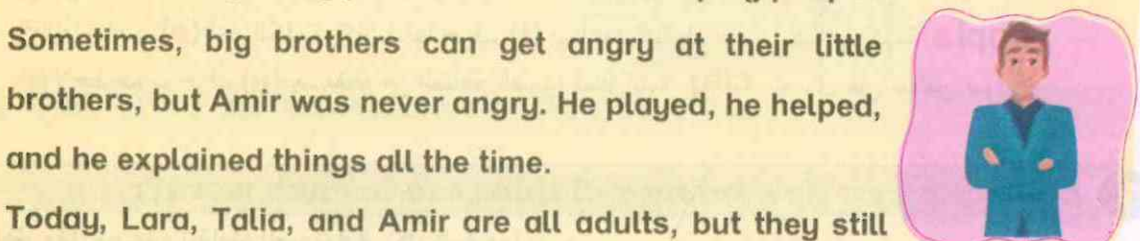
2 **Read and listen. Do you know anyone like Lara, Talia, or Amir?**

اقرأ واستمع هل تعرف أشخاص مثل لارا وتاليا وأمير؟

Lara, Talia, and Amir are cousins, but they are all very different.

When Lara was a child, she loved to experiment. She was very curious. She always carried a screwdriver and she opened old radios, cell phones, and anything that had electricity. Her favorite question was: How does it work? She learned about safety with electricity.

When Talia was a baby, she played with blocks. She put one block on top of another. When she was older, she started making things. She made a little house for her dog and a bed for her sister's doll. She always carried a tape measure and a pencil.



Amir was always very patient and he liked helping people. Sometimes, big brothers can get angry at their little brothers, but Amir was never angry. He played, he helped, and he explained things all the time.

Today, Lara, Talia, and Amir are all adults, but they still call each other when they need some help.

Lara

Talia

Amir

3 **Think, choose, and write. What do you think Lara, Talia, and Amir do today?:** فكر واختر واكتب ماذا تعتقد أن لارا وتاليا وأمير يعملون اليوم؟

an architect - an electrician - a teacher

1. Lara is ______________________
2. Talia is ______________________
3. Amir is ______________________

1 Read again and answer the questions: اقرأ مرة أخرى وأجب عن الأسئلة:

1. Who does Amir call when the fan doesn't work? ------------------
2. Who does Lara call when she wants to change something in her house?
----
3. Who does Talia call when she doesn't understand something in her English class?



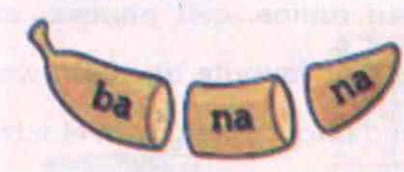
Pronunciation & Math

Syllables المقاطع الصوتية

◉ تتكون الكلمات فى اللغة الانجليزية من مقاطع صوتية وكل مقطع صوتى يحتوى على صوت متحرك كما يلى:

Count the syllables.





١) كلمة **bin** تحتوى على مقطع صوتى واحد حيث بها صوت **short i**.
٢) كلمة **dentist** تحتوى على مقطعين صوتيين حيث بها صوتين متحركين [e / i].

لاحظ!

١) فى اغلب الكلمات إذا جاءت الحروف المتحركة معا دون فاصل فهى بذلك تعد مقطع صوتى واحد.
فمثلا كلمة **builder** بها حرفين متحركين متتاليين (u / i) لكنهما لا يوجد بينهما فاصل إذا هما مقطع واحد.
٢) فى كلمة **make** تنتهى الكلمة بحرف e لكنه هنا لا يعتبر صوت متحرك لأنه غير منطوق أصلاً.
٣) إذا جاءت (e) آخر الكلمة وكان قبلها حرف (l) فهنا تعد كمقطع صوتى كما فى كلمة **apple**.
٤) لاحظ صوت حرف (y) يعد مقطع من المقاطع الصوتية فمثلاً كلمة **city** تحتوى على مقطعين صوتين.

1 Look and say. How many syllables are in each word?

أنظر وقل كم عدد المقاطع الصوتية فى كل كلمة مما يلى:

electrician	4	e-lec-tri-cian	plumber	
teacher	2	teach-er	mechanic	
collector			dentist	
architect			doctor	

Help your child learn how to count the syllables. ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم كيف يعد المقاطع الصوتية.

- بعد ان تعلمنا أن الكلمات الانجليزية تقسم إلى مقاطع صوتية نتعلم أن هناك مقطع يكون مشدد فى الكلمة (أى أن صوت هذا المقطع يكون أكثر صوت بارز فى الكلمة).
وتختلف الشدة (ّ) فى اللغة العربية حيث تكون علي حرف فى الكلمة أما فى اللغة الانجليزية تكون على مقطع من المقاطع ويجب معرفة المقطع المشدد فى اللغة الانجليزية لان ذلك ممكن يغير المعنى فمثلاً كلمة (pres-ent) تعنى هدية وذلك إذا كان التشديد على المقطع الأول. أما إذا كان التشديد على المقطع الثانى pres-ent يكون معناها يُقدم.
- ولمعرفة المقطع المشدد فى اللغة الانجليزية نقسم الكلمة إلى مقاطع صوتية ثم نسمع الكلمة ونحدد المقطع أو نبحث عن الكلمة فى قاموس وسنرى علامة (•) فوق المقطع المشدد فمثلا فى كلمة (dentist) تقسم إلى (den-tist) نلاحظ أن التشديد على المقطع الأول.

dentist

- لاحظ الكلمات الآتية التشديد على المقطع الأول.

plumber / teacher / builder / driver / doctor / architect

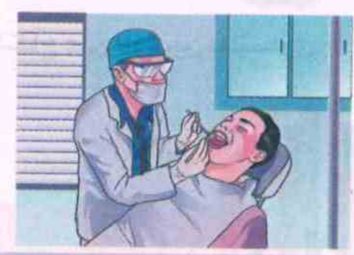
- الكلمة الآتية التشديد على المقطع الثانى.

mechanic

- الكلمة الآتية التشديد على المقطع الثالث.

electrician

2 Which one is correct? Listen and choose: أى مقطع مشدد؟ استمع واختر:



dentist or dentist

3 Underline the stressed syllable in the words:

ضع خط تحت المقطع المشدد فى الكلمات:

plumber teacher collector dentist driver doctor

4 Listen and circle the words which have the correct stress:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الكلمة التى بها التشديد الصحيح:

1. plumber	plumber	4. mechanic	mechanic
2. teacher	teacher	5. driver	driver
3. collector	collector	6. doctor	doctor



CLIL: MATH

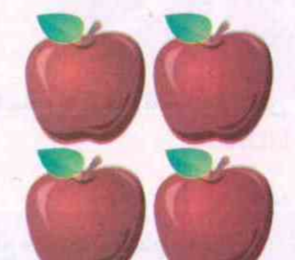
Math: Division

- عملية القسمة هى تقسيم مجموعة أشياء إلى أجزاء متساوية.

TIP!

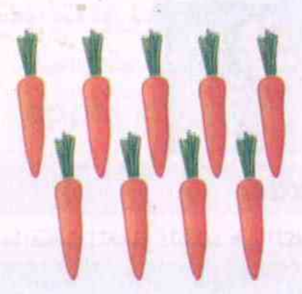
Division is separating into different groups.
15 ÷ 3 = 5 Fifteen divided by three equals five.

- عملية القسمة هى تقسيم العدد إلى مجموعات متساوية.





4 ÷ 2 = 2 لدينا هنا ٤ تفاحات وولدين والمطلوب تقسيم التفاح على الولدين بالتساوى.






9 ÷ 3 = 3

فى هذا المثال لدينا ٩ جزرات وثلاث بنات ولمعرفة كم جزرة لكل فتاه نقسم العدد الكبير (الجزر) على العدد الصغير (البنات).

1 Look and think. Write the missing numbers:

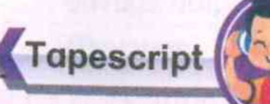
انظر وفكر. أكتب الأرقام الناقصة:

	a	b
1	100 ÷ .... = 2	100 ÷ 2 = ...
2	100 ÷ 25 = ...	100 ÷ .... = 25
3	100 ÷ .... = 5	100 ÷ 5 = ...

2 Listen and check:

استمع وتأكد:

استمع للنص وتأكد من إجابتك فى التمرين السابق.



Tapescript نص الاستماع

1 a one hundred divided by fifty equals two.
1 b one hundred divided by two equals fifty.
2 a one hundred divided by twenty-five equals four.
2 b one hundred divided by four equals twenty-five.
3 a one hundred divided by twenty equals five.
3 b one hundred divided by five equals twenty.

3 Read and solve the problem:

اقرأ وحل المسألة:

There are two hundred children in Grade 4. Today they are going on a school trip. Each school bus carries 50 children.
How many buses do they need? ....



Find out

What is this symbol ÷ called? A Swiss mathematician* called Johann Rahn used it first in 1659.

ماذا يسمى الرمز ÷؟ استخدمه عالم رياضيات سويسرى يدعى يوهان ران لأول مرة عام ١٦٥٩.

A mathematician* works with numbers and math problems.
يعمل عالم الرياضيات مع الأرقام والمسائل الحسابية.

Activities



1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

	True	False
1 Fatma wanted to be an architect.		
2 Farid wanted to be a mechanic.		
3 Amr, Fatma and Farid are friends.		
4 Amr wanted to be an electrician.		

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة

1. The electrician uses .... to open old radios.
   a blocks b tape measures c screwdrivers d pens
2. The .... always carries a tape measure and a pencil.
   a teacher b architect c farmer d electrician
3. Division is separating into different ....
   a colors b groups c shapes d times
4. Marawan is always .... He is never angry.
   a sad b bad c ugly d patient

3 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 What job	a. She fixes pipes.
2 Amir was always	b. She carries a screwdriver.
3 Lara is an electrician.	c. with blocks.
4 Talia played	d. very patient.
	e. do you want to do?

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة وأجب عن الأسئلة:

My sister Nada is in Grade Four. She wants to be an architect. When Nada was three, she played with blocks. When she was older, she started making things. She made a house for her cat. She always carried a tape measure and a pencil. My father and mother always help her.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Nada is in Grade ....
   a 4 b 5 c 6 d 3
2. Nada's .... always help her.
   a cousins b sisters c parents d grandparents

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What did Nada make for her cat?
   ----
4. When did Nada play with blocks?
   ----

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. curious - Lara - very - was.
   ----
2. does - How - work - it?
   ----
3. likes - people - Amir - helping.
   ----
4. She - experiment - to - loved.
   ----

6 Write a paragraph of TWENTY FOUR (24) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٢٤) كلمة عن:

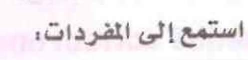
مجاب عنه آخر الوحدة

An electrician

electrician - fixes



Lessons 4&5 ★ Writing ★ Project



Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:





good جيد



bad سيء



cleaner عامل نظافة



aunt عمة / خالة



mail carrier ساعي بريد

Important words كلمات هامة

class	حصة / درس	pros (good things)	مميزات
on the one hand	من جهة	cons (bad things)	عيوب
on the other hand	من الجهة الآخرى	America	أمريكا
point	نقطة	easy	سهل
fun	ممتع	heavy	ثقيل
everyone	كل احد	weather	طقس
great	رائع	everybody	كل شخص
exercise	تدريب / تمرين	wake up	يستيقظ

Language Functions وظائف لغوية

تدرس فى هذا الدرس مميزات (pros) وعيوب (cons) وظيفة ساعى البريد:

Pros مميزات	Cons عيوب
- Mail carriers get a lot of exercise. - يحصل ساعي البريد على الكثير من التدريب.	- The mail bag is very heavy. - حقيبة ساعي البريد ثقيلة جدًا.
- They speak to a lot of people. - يتحدثون إلى الكثير من الناس.	- Mail carriers wake up very early. - يستيقظ ساعي البريد مبكرًا جدًا.

1 Think about a mail carrier's job. What are the good and bad things about the job?: فكر في وظيفة ساعي البريد ما مميزات وعيوب هذه الوظيفة؟

2 Read and complete the table: اقرأ وأكمل الجدول:

My name is Sherifa. In class this week, we're talking about the good and bad things about different jobs. My aunt is a mail carrier in America. I talked to her about her job and she told me some of the pros and cons.

Pros and cons of being a mail carrier.

What's it like to be a mail carrier?

There are some good and bad points about the job.

On one hand, mail carriers are outside all day. This is great when the weather is good, but it's not fun when the weather is very hot or cold. Mail carriers walk all day and get a lot of exercise.

Everybody likes getting mail, so everyone likes meeting the mail carrier.

On the other hand there are also some bad things to think about. Being a mail carrier is not an easy job. The mail bag is very heavy.

Another bad thing is that they wake up very early. My aunt starts work at 6 o'clock in the morning.

Pros (Good thing)	Cons (Bad things)
- Mail carriers get a lot of exercise.	It's not easy.
....	....
....	....

3 Read again and answer the questions:

1. What is the paragraph about? عن ماذا تدور الفقرة السابقة؟

----

2. How does Sherifa start her paragraph? كيف بدأت شريفة الفقرة الانشائية؟

----

3. How does this help the reader? كيف ساعد ذلك القارىء؟

Help your child know the pros and cons of being a mail carrier. ساعد طفلك أن يعرف مميزات وعيوب أن يكون ساعي بريد.

4 Choose a job. Write some pros and cons:

اختر وظيفة واكتب بعض الميزات والعيوب:

The job I chose is ....

Pros	Cons

A report about people who help us

تقرير عن ناس تساعدنا

5 Read the report:

اقرأ التقرير:



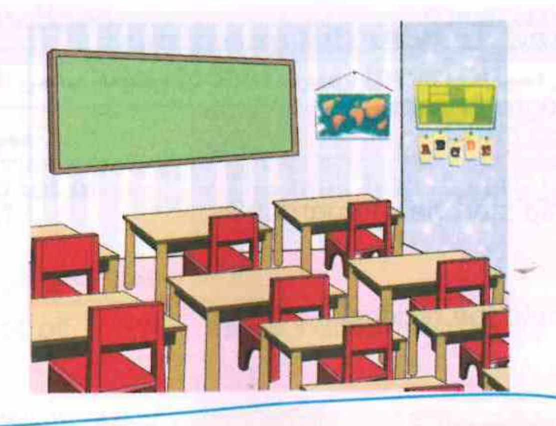
Workers who made our school



The plumbers connect the pipes so that we have water. The electricians connect electricity so that we can use lights.

The cleaners keep the school clean. The bus drivers bring the children to school. The garbage collectors take away our garbage.

The mechanics fix the cars and buses that bring the children to school.





Activities

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. The .... connects pipes.
   a cleaner b mechanic c plumber d builder
2. The bus driver .... children to school.
   a draws b fixes c uses d brings
3. The cleaners keep the school ....
   a dirty b clean c bad d ugly
4. Can you write about the pros and .... of being a mail carrier?
   a cans b coats c coins d cons

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

drivers - away - connect - deliver

There are a lot of workers who work in our school. The plumbers ❶ .... the pipes at school so that we have water. The bus ❷ .... bring children to school. The garbage collectors take ❸ .... the garbage to keep the school clean.

3 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 Everybody likes	a. points of each job.
2 There are good and bad	b. meeting the mail carrier.
3 My father starts work	c. fixes the bus.
4 Being a mail carrier	d. isn't an easy job.
	e. at eight o'clock in the morning.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:
اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. are - **Mail** - all - outside - carriers - day.

----

2. school - **Who** - clean - keeps - the?

----

3. heavy - very - **The mail** - is - bag.

----

4. get - exercise - **Mail** - a lot of - carriers.

----

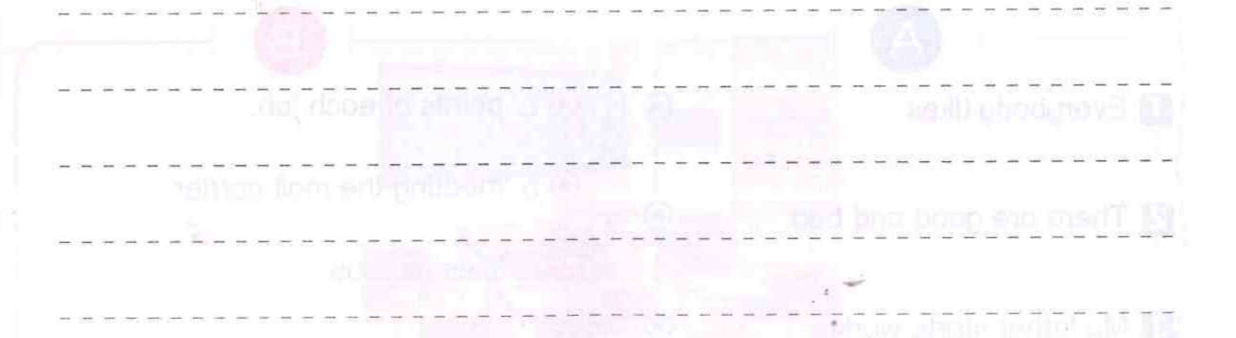
5 Punctuate the following:
ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

the mechanic fixes cars and buses

----

6 Write a paragraph of TWENTY FOUR (24) words using the following guiding elements:
اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٢٤) كلمة عن







Review

Jobs الوظائف


electrician
كهربائي


plumber
سباك


garbage collector
عامل نظافة


mail carrier
ساعي بريد


mechanic
ميكانيكى


bus driver
سائق اتوبيس

Electricity الكهرباء


electric shock
صدمة كهربائية


socket
مقبس (بريزة)


plug
فيشة


tools
ادوات


lightning
برق


electricity
كهرباء

Three cousins أولاد العم الثلاثة


experiment
يجرب / يختبر


screwdriver
مفك


architect
مهندس معمارى


tape measure
شريط قياس


blocks
لعبة المكعبات

cell phone
تليفون محمول

Help your child review Unit 5. ساعد طفلك يراجع الوحدة الخامسة.

Unit 5 Where do you work?

on the one hand	من جهة	pros	مميزات
on the other hand	من الجهة الآخرى	cons	عيوب

Grammar قواعد لغوية

This, That, These, Those

- للاشارة إلى شىء مفرد قريب نستخدم (this) بمعنى هذا / هذه.
- This is the screwdriver.
- للاشارة إلى شىء مفرد بعيد نستخدم (that) بمعنى (ذلك / تلك).
- That's the faucet.
- للاشارة إلى أشياء (جمع) قريبة نستخدم (These) بمعنى (هؤلاء).
- These are the plumber's tools.
- للاشارة إلى أشياء (جمع) بعيدة نستخدم (Those) بمعنى (اولئك).



- Those are the mail carrier's parcels.



ملاحظات على نطق بعض الكلمات

1. لنطق كلمة (eletrician) انطق الحروف (cian) مثل نطق شن فى اللغة العربية.
2. لنطق كلمة (garbage) انطق حرف (g) الأول كما ينطق فى كلمة (goat) و حرف (g) الثانى ينطق مثل (j) فى كلمة (jam).
3. لنطق كلمة (mechanic) انطق حرفي (ch) مثل (k).
4. فى كلمة (plumber) حرف (b) صامت لا ينطق.
5. لنطق كلمة (faucet) انطق حرفي (au) مثل نطق حرف (o) فى كلمة (north) وانطق (cet) مثل (sit).
6. لنطق كلمة (screwdriver) انطق الحروف (rew) مثل حرفي (ue) في كلمة (blue).
7. كلمة (patient) المقطع الصوتى (tien) ينطق مثل كلمة (شن).
8. كلمة (architect) الحرفين (ch) ينطقا مثل (k).
9. كلمة (mathematician) المقطع الصوتى (cian) ينطق مثل (شن).



مهارات الكتابة

Write a paragraph / an email of TWENTY FOUR (24) words.

Answers to Paragraphs / emails

Lesson 1

1.

New Message		Cc Bcc
To	ayman@gmail.com	
From	osama@gmail.com	
Subject	The plumber	

Dear Ayman,

How are you? I want to tell you about an interesting job. My uncle is a plumber. He works all day. He fixes pipes and faucets. He is healthy. His job is very hard. His job is very important.

Yours,
Osama

Lesson 3
An electrician

2. My father is an electrician. He studied and practiced electricity. He connects your home to electricity. He fixes sockets. It's an interesting job.

Lessons 4,5
A mail carrier

3. Amr is a mail carrier. He walks all day and gets a lot of exercise. He is healthy. He speaks to a lot of people. Everyone likes to meet him.

Unit 5 Activity
A garbage collector

4. A garbage collector's job is very important. A garbage collector works hard to collect the trash. He keeps the streets clean. We all respect him.



Al-Azhar Exercises الأسئلة الخاصة بالأزهر الشريف

A- Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer: استمع واختر:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Ihab is .... years old. (50 - 40 - 30)
2. Ihab goes out on his boat and catches .... (pens - fish - tools)

B- Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialog: اقرأ وأكمل:

Why - teacher - job

Gamal : Which- ---------------------- is the most interesting?
Emad : I think being a- ----------------------
Gamal : ---------------------- do you like this job?
Emad : Because teachers help and teach children.

C- Reading Comprehension

3 Read and choose the correct answer: اقرأ واختر:

I'm Ali. I love my father. My father's name is Ahmed. He is fifty years old. He is a plumber. He fixes pipes and faucets. He works all the day. My father is very helpful.

Choose the correct answer:

1. Ali's father is.................. years old. (40 - 50 - 60)
2. Ali's father is a .... (plumber - teacher - doctor)
3. Ali's father is .... (bad - not good - helpful)
4. He fixes .... (boots - pipes - pens)
5. Ali's father works all the .... (hour - minute - day)

D- Vocabulary and Structures

4 Choose the right answer from a, b, or c: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة

1. .... plumbers fix faucets.
   a This b That c These
2. The teacher should be .... all the time.
   a angry b patient c dangerous
3. She loved to experiment. She was very ....
   a angry b lazy c curious
4. Look, ... bird is flying.
   a these b that c those
5. We love our teacher because he is always ....
   a angry b sad c patient

E- Writing

5 Rearrange the words to make correct sentences: اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة:

1. The bus driver - the children - brings - school - to.
----
2. gets - A mail - very - carrier - up - early.
----
3. can - fast - travel - How - electricity?
----
4. are - day - all - outside - Mail carriers .
----

6 Write a paragraph of Four (4) sentences about: اكتب فقرة انشائية من (٤) جمل:

Different jobs

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

On Unit 5 Activity



1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

	True	False
1 Mahmoud is a teacher.		
2 Mahmoud is a bad electrician.		
3 Mahmoud practiced electricity for four years.		
4 Mahmoud knows how to work safely with electricity.		

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Mechanics .... our cars.
   a play b eat c fix d build
2. A .... delivers your parcels.
   a teacher b mechanic c mail carrier d plumber
3. .... touch anything electrical with wet hands.
   a Always b Never c Isn't d Didn't
4. .... children are so clever.
   a That b This c These d Then

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

driver - drives - fix - connects

My father's friend is a bus driver. He 1 .... buses. He brings the children to school. All the children like him. A bus 2 .... drives to many different places. He needs the mechanic to 3 .... the bus.

4 Read and match: اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 Electricity	a. delivers letters.
2 A mail carrier	b. electrical with wet hands.
3 This mechanic is	c. working in the repair shop.
4 Never touch anything	d. can burn us.
	e. only use plugs.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

5 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Mr Magdy is a teacher. He's a maths teacher. He is very patient. He likes helping people. He never gets angry. He likes his job. He helps his students. He explains the lessons to them. His students like him. I want to be a teacher, too.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Mr Magdy doesn't get ....
   a angry b well c patient d happy
2. Mr Magdy is my brother's a / an ....
   a plumber b teacher c electrician d mechanic

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What does Mr Magdy teach? ------------------------------------
4. Who likes Mr Magdy? ------------------------------------

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. touch - **Never** - electrical - anything - wet - hands - with.

----

2. it - **Is** - to easy - become - an electrician?

----

3. can - electricity - **How** - safely - use - we?

----

7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

i want to be a teacher

----

8 Write a paragraph of TWENTY FOUR (24) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٢٤) كلمة عن:

مجاب عنه آخر الوحدة

A garbage collector

collects - trash

Theme 2

Myself and others

Unit 6

What do you do?

ماذا تعمل؟

نطق الكلمات الجديدة التي أعلاها علامة نجمة* أنظر آخر الوحدة

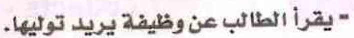






Objectives of the Unit أهداف الوحدة

1. Read and learn about more jobs.
- يتعلم الطالب ويقرأ عن المزيد من الوظائف.
2. Explore what an industry is and the names of some common industries.
- يستكشف الطالب عن الصناعة وأسماء بعض الصناعات الشائعة.
3. Know about prime numbers.
- يعرف الطالب عن الأعداد الأولية.
4. Distinguish and pronounce short vowel sounds.
- يفرق الطالب بين الأصوات المتحركة القصيرة وينطقها.
5. Learn about words with the prefix dis-.
- يتعلم الطالب عن كلمات تبدأ بالبادئة (-dis).
6. Write about a job you want to do.
- يقرأ الطالب عن وظيفة يريد توليها.





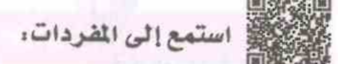


Lesson 1

★ What do you do?



Key vocabulary



استمع إلى المفردات:



boat قارب

catch fish يصطاد سمك

Fishing صيد السمك

fisherman صياد سمك

net شبكة



tourism سياحة



guide* مرشد سياحي



Tourism industry صناعة السياحة

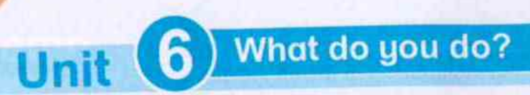


hotel فندق



transportation المواصلات

Help your child learn about different industries. ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن الصناعات المختلفة.





farmer فلاح

Farming الزراعة



pick يقطف



school مَدرسة

Education* التعليم



librarian أمينة مكتبة



teacher مُدرسة

Other words كلمات أخرى

early مبكرًا	history تاريخ
library مكتبة	information معلومات
factory مصنع	

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
look after	يعتنى بـ	looked after
explain	يشرح / يفسر	explained
turn	يدور / يلف	turned

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
catch	يصطاد	caught
wake up	يستيقظ	woke up
sell	يبيع	sold



Language Functions وظائف لغوية

◉ ندرس فى هذا الدرس مجموعة من الصناعات والامور المرتبطة بكل صناعة كالعاملين بها واماكن عملهم وطبيعة عملهم كالآتى:

Industry الصناعة	Who? مَن؟	Where? أين؟	What? ماذا؟
Fishing	fisherman	on the sea	catches fish / sells fish
Tourism	guide	hotels / outside	explains the history / tells tourists interesting stories
Farming	farmer	farm	grows / looks after vegetables and fruit
Education	teachers librarians	school	teaches children. looks after books. helps children find information.

Study the following

1. A fisherman goes out on his boat and catches fish.
- يخرج الصياد فى قاربه ويصطاد سمك.

2. A fisherman sells fish in the market. - يبيع الصياد السمك فى السوق.

3. A farmer grows oranges and looks after the trees.
- يزرع الفلاح برتقال ويعتنى بالاشجار.

4. A farmer sends a lot of fruit to the factory to make orange juice.
- يرسل الفلاح الكثير من الفاكهة إلى المصنع لعمل عصير برتقال.

5. A guide works in the tourism industry. - يعمل المرشد السياحى فى صناعة السياحة.

6. A guide explains the history and tells the tourists lots of interesting information about the places they visit.
- يشرح المرشد السياحى التاريخ ويخبر السائحين بكثير من المعلومات الشيقة عن الأماكن التى يزورها.

9. A librarian works in a school library. - يعمل أمين المكتبة فى مكتبة المدرسة.

10. A librarian looks after the books. - يعتنى أمين المكتبة بالكتب.

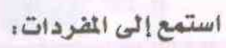
11. A librarian helps children find the information they need.
- يساعد أمين المكتبة الأطفال أن يجدوا المعلومات التى يحتاجونها.

Unit 6 What do you do?

1 Listen and read. What jobs do these people do?

استمع واقرأ. ما الوظائف التي يقوم بها هؤلاء الأشخاص؟





استمع إلى المفردات:

1- I'm a fisherman. I wake up very early every day, I go out on my boat and catch fish. Then in the afternoon, I come back and sell my fish in the market. My fish go to restaurants and homes all over the world.



2- I'm a farmer. I grow oranges. All year, I look after the trees and I give them water and nutrients. Then, I pick the fruit. I send a lot of the fruit to the factory to make orange juice. I also sell some of my oranges to the supermarket.

3- I'm a guide. I work in the tourism industry. People come to my country and it's my job to explain the history and tell the tourists lots of interesting information about the places they visit.

4- I'm a librarian. I work in a school library. It's my job to look after all the books. I buy lots of new books and I help children find the information they need.

2 Listen again and answer:

استمع مرة أخرى وأجب:

1- Who works in a school?
A librarian.

2- Who works outside?
....

3- Who works on the sea?
....

4- Who grows food?
....

Help your child read and answer the questions. ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويجيب عن الأسئلة.

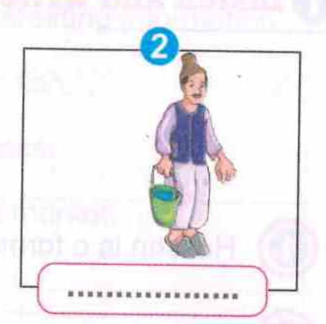
3 Write the words under the pictures:

اكتب الكلمات تحت الصور:

education - farming - fishing - tourism



1 fishing



2 ....



3 ....



4 ....

4 Look and write. Which industry are the words connected to? Can you add more words to the table?

انظر واكتب اى من الكلمات ترتبط بالصناعة. هل يمكنك إضافة كلمات آخرى بالجدول؟

animals - teachers - hotels - nets - transportation library - trees- boats

farming	
fishing	
tourism	
education	

Help your child sort the words. ساعد طفلك في تصنيف الكلمات.

Activities



1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

	True	False
1 Hassan is a farmer.		
2 Hassan grows apples.		
3 Hassan keeps animals.		
4 Hassan waters the trees.		

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. A .... catches fish.
   a guide b fisherman c farmer d librarian
2. The guide works in the .... industry.
   a education b electricity c tourism d energy
3. My father grows vegetables and fruits on his farm. He is a / an ....
   a farmer b engineer c guide d librarian
4. A .... helps children find the information they need in the library.
   a farmer b fisherman c librarian d guide

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

sells - homes - catches - farmer

My uncle is a fisherman. He wakes up very early every day.He goes out on his boat and ❶ .... fish. In the afternoon, he comes back and ❷ .... fish in the market. His fish go to the restaurants and ❸ .... all over the world.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

4 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 Farmers pick	a. lots of interesting information.
2 The fisherman sells his	b. and catch fish.
3 I go on a boat	c. all the books.
4 I tell the tourists	d. fish in the market.
	e. the fruit.

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملا صحيحة:

1. works - on - **Who** - the - sea?
   -
2. in - industry - **I** - tourism - work - the.
   -
3. looks - **The** - farmer - after - trees - the.
   -
4. in - **The** - the school - works - librarian - library.
   -

6 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

a guide explains the history

- -

7 Write a paragraph of TWENTY FOUR (24) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٢٤) كلمة عن:

مجاب عنه فى آخر الوحدة

The farmer

pick - grow trees

- -

- -

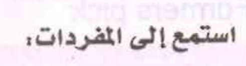
- -

- -



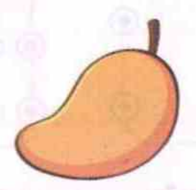
★ CLIL: Science








cut down يقطع


mango مانجو


money نقود

Non-renewable غير متجددة


gas غاز


oil بترول


coal فحم

Renewable متجددة

Energy Resources
مصادر الطاقة


wave energy طاقة الأمواج


wind energy طاقة الرياح


solar energy طاقة شمسية

Help your child learn about energy resources. ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن مصادر الطاقة.

Other words كلمات أخرى

wood	خشب	cause pollution	تسبب تلوث
pros	مميزات	right	صح
cons	عيوب	wrong	خطأ
sources / resources	مصادر	run out	ينفذ

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ	Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ
have / has يملك	had	eat يأكل	ate
grow ينمو	grew	sell يبيع	sold
burn يحرق/ يحترق	burnt	give يعطى	gave
		cut down يقطع / يُزيل	cut down

Definitions تعريفات

Renewable متجددة — It can grow a gain or never run out.
يمكن أن تنمو مرة أخرى أو لا تنفذ أبدًا.

Non- renewable غير متجددة — It can run out or never grow again.
يمكن أن تنفذ أو لا تنمو مجددًا.

Study the following

➤ ندرس فى هذا الدرس المصادر المتجددة وغير المتجددة للطاقة:

1. المصادر المتجددة (Renewable resources) هى المصادر التى لا تنتهى والموجودة دائمًا.
2. المصادر غير المتجددة (Non-renewable resources) هى المصادر التى ستنتهى بالتأكيد لأننا نستخدمها وسوف تنفذ.

Renewable متجددة		Non-renewable غير متجددة	
wind energy	طاقة الرياح	oil	بترول
wave energy	طاقة الأمواج	coal	فحم
solar energy	الطاقة الشمسية	gas	غاز

1 Read. Is a mango tree renewable or non-renewable?

اقرأ. هل شجرة المانجو مصدر متجدد أو غير متجدد؟

Two mango trees

Sara and Malak are sisters. Each sister had a beautiful mango tree next to her house. Every year, the sisters ate beautiful mangoes. Their children played under the trees.

One day, Malak said, "I don't need mangoes. I need money. Let's cut down my tree. I can sell the wood."

She cut the tree and she sold the wood. Malak was happy.

Next year, Sara's mango tree grew bigger and bigger. It gave Sara more mangoes.

Malak looked out of the window. There was no mango tree. She had no mangoes and no more wood.

"Don't worry," said Sara. "Plant this mango seed, and it will grow into a big tree."

1 Read again and answer the questions: اقرأ مرة اخرى وأجب على الاسئلة :

1. Why does Malak cut down the mango tree? ______________________
2. What are the cons of cutting down the mango tree? ______________________
3. What do you think of what Malak did? Was she right or wrong? ______________________
4. Would you cut the mango tree? ______________________

2 We make electricity from energy sources. Match the energy sources to the pictures: نولد الكهرباء من مصادر الطاقة. صل مصدر الطاقة بالصور.

1. oil •
2. wave energy •
3. coal •
4. solar energy •
5. wind energy •
6. gas •

(a) (b) (c)

(d) (e) (f)

3 Write each energy source in the table:

اكتب كل مصدر للطاقة وصنفه في الجدول الآتي:

Renewable متجدد	Non-renewable غير متجدد



Activities

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Coal, oil and gas are .... energy resources.
   a renewable b funny c lazy d non-renewable
2. People cut down the trees to .... the wood.
   a buy b grow c sell d draw
3. The .... energy is a renewable energy.
   a wood b gas c coal d solar
4. Plant this seed. It will grow into a ....
   a table b bed c tree d chair

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

down - trees - sold - happy

My friend Amr needed money to buy things. He had a lot of ❶ .... in the garden. He cut ❷ .... a lot of trees. He ❸ .... them. He was very sad because there were no trees in the garden.

3 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل:

A

1. Renewable energy
2. Sara's mango tree
3. Malak cut down
4. Plant this

B

- a. was happy.
- b. can grow again or never run out.
- c. mango seed.
- d. gave her more mangoes.
- e. the tree to get wood.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. Malak - and - sisters - are - **Sara** .

----

2. will - grow - **The seed** - into - tree - a big.

----

3. does - **Why** - Malak - down - cut - tree - the mango?

----

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

Would you cut the mango tree

----

6 Write a paragraph of TWENTY FOUR (24) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٢٤) كلمة عن:

مجاب اخر الوحدة

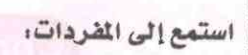
Wind energy

resources - renewable

Lesson 3

★ Fresh Fish Van
★ Pronunciation & Math







Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



fresh fish van شاحنة سمك طازج





fisherman صياد



grandpa جد



village قرية

A short story قصة قصيرة





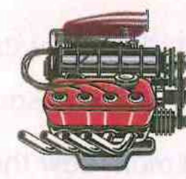
sad حزين



disappointed مُحبط



10 عشرة



engine* محرك



van شاحنة



fish سمكة



the sun الشمس

Help your child know new words. ساعد طفلك أن يعرف كلمات جديدة.

Other words كلمات أخرى

in front of	أمام	problem	مشكلة
opinion	رأي		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
shout	يصيح	shouted
skim	يقرأ سريعًا (يتصفح)	skimed

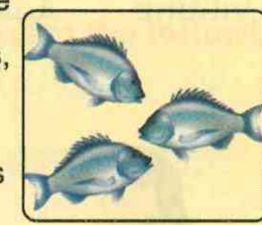
Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
get	يحصل على	got
hear	يسمع	heard
have fun	يستمتع بوقته	had fun

1 Skim the story quickly. Who are the main characters?

تصفح القصة سريعاً؟ من هم الشخصيات الرئيسية؟

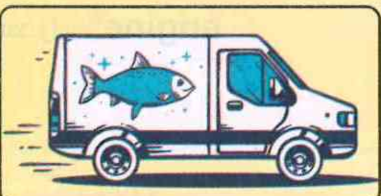
Fresh fish van استمع إلى النص:



There's an old fisherman in my village. He drives around the village in an old van. He likes his job. He has fun. He shouts, "Fish! Fresh fish! Come and get your lovely fresh fish".

One day, he was in front of my house. He couldn't start his van. He was sad and disappointed.

My mom saw the man. It was hot in the sun. She wanted to help.



Mom's dad (my grandpa) was a mechanic. He taught her all about cars. She looked at the old van's engine.

"It is a very simple problem. I can fix it," said Mom.

The old fisherman was surprised.

Then, we heard the sound of the engine. His van was fixed!

"Thank you," the fisherman said. He gave Mom ten fresh fish.

2 How much do you remember? Answer. Then read and check

كم مقدار ما تتذكره؟ أجب. ثم اقرأ وتأكد:

1. What does the old man sell? He sells _______________
2. Why was the old man sad and disappointed?
   Because he couldn't _______________
   ____
3. Why do you think the old man was surprised? Because _______________
   ____

3 Match and write:

صل واكتب:

fish - sun - ten - van

1  ....

2 10 ....

3  ....

4  ....

4 Read the story again and answer. Use the words in Exercise 3:

أقرأ القصة مرة أخرى واجب. استخدم الكلمات من تمرين ٣:

1. What is hot?
   The sun.
2. What does the old man drive? - ماذا يقود الرجل المسن؟
   ____
3. What does the old man sell? - ماذا يبيع الرجل المسن؟
   ____
4. How many fish does the old man give Mom? - كم سمكة اعطى الرجل المسن للأم؟
   ____

5 Read and say. Close your book. Can you remember the sentences?

أقرأ وقل . اغلق كتابك. هل تستطيع تذكر هذه الجمل؟

1. You can have fun in the sun.
2. There's a man in a van.
3. He sells fresh fish from the river.
4. There are ten men standing on one leg.

Unit 6 What do you do?



Pronunciation

★ **Listen and say:** استمع وقل

استمع إلى المفردات:



/i/ fish سمكة	/e/ 10 ten عشرة	/æ/ van شاحنة	/ʌ/ sun الشمس





١- ندرس فى هذا الدرس الصوت (/i/) و (/e/) ونلاحظ الفرق بينهما كما فى كلمتى fish و ten وكلمتى ten / tin حيث نلاحظ فى نطق (tin) أن (in) تنطق مثل كلمة (in) بمعنى فى لكن (en) تنطق مثل (en) فى (pen).

٢- ندرس أيضا الصوت /æ/ و /ʌ/ والفرق بينهما كما فى الكلمتين van و sun حيث تشبه كلمة van نطق كلمة man وكلمة sun تشبه نطق كلمة bus.

٣- وندرس أيضا بادئة الكلمات (dis) والتى تعطى معنى النفى.

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماض
disagree	لا يوافق	disagreed
disappear	يختفى	disappeared
disappoint	يُحبط	disappointed

Present مضارع		Past ماض
dislike	لا يحب	disliked
disobey	لا يطيع	disobeyed

1 Find more words in the text with the same sound:

اوجد كلمات أخرى فى النص بنفس الصوت:

sun	van	fish	ten
bus	man	fin	pen
....	....	....	....
....	....	....	....

Help your child learn about short vowels. ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن الأصوات المتحركة القصيرة.

2 Look and write. Complete the sentences: انظر واكتب- أكمل الجمل:

disagree - disappeared - disappointed - dislikes - disobeyed



1 The boy is .... He didn't pass the test.



2 She .... ice cream.



3 These friends ....



4 I'm sorry because I .... my mom.



5 The rabbit .... from the hat.



MATH

Prime numbers الاعداد الأولية

- A prime number is a number you can divide only by itself and 1, e.g. 2, 3, 5, etc.

ندرس فى هذا الدرس العدد الأولى وهو العدد الذى يقبل القسمة على نفسه وعلى الواحد مثل:

2 , 3 , 5 , 7 , 11 ....



لاحظ

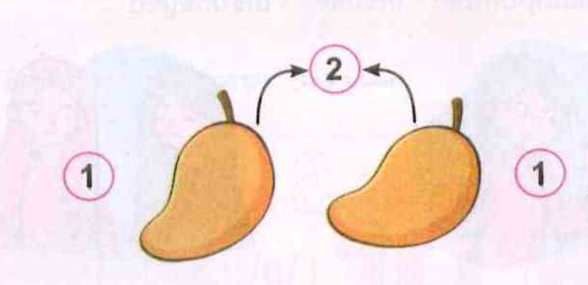
- العدد ٤ ليس عدد أولى لأنه يقبل القسمة على نفسه وعلى الواحد وعلى رقم ٢.
- العدد ٩ غير أولى لأنه يقبل القسمة على نفسه وعلى الواحد وعلى ٣
- لاحظ الأعداد الأولية من 1 - 100

(2, 3, 5, 7, 11, 13, 17, 19, 23, 29, 31, 37, 41, 43, 47, 53, 59, 61, 67, 71, 73, 79, 83, 89, 97)

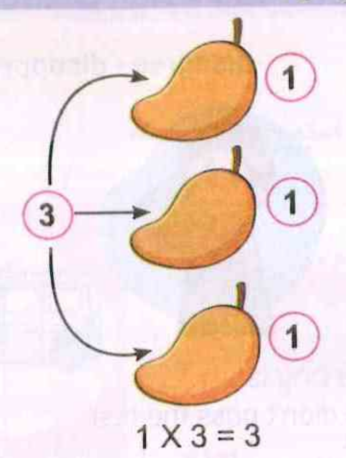


Unit 6 What do you do?

1 Look and read: انظر واقرأ:



1 X 2 = 2



1 X 3 = 3

2 Circle the prime numbers: ضع دائرة حول الرقم الأولى:

10 12 3 89 43

5 9 37 4 13

3 Add these numbers. If the answer is a prime number write it in red: اجمع الآتى وإذا كان الناتج عدد أولى اكتبه بالأحمر:

1 6 + 7 = ...

2 37 + 20 = ...

3 70 + 9 = ...

4 40 + 4 = ...



Find out

Circle the smallest prime numbers:

- ضع دائرة حول اصغر عدد أولى.

2, 3, 5, 7, 9, 11, 13, 15, 17, 19, 23 and 29.

Is number 1 a prime number or not?

- هل رقم ١ عدد أولى ام لا؟



Activities

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة

1. The mom could .... the old van's engine.
   a fix b shout c teach d play
2. The boy is .... He didn't pass the test.
   a disappeared b disappointed c disobeyed d disliked
3. We .... the sound of the engine.
   a drove b gave c heard d burnt
4. He is a bad boy. He .... his mom.
   a disappeared b loved c paid d disobeyed

2 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 The fisherman sells	a. old man drive?
2 The rabbit	b. disappeared from the hat.
3 The fisherman gave	c. ice cream.
4 She dislikes	d. fish around the village.
	e. mom ten fresh fish.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

There's an old fisherman in my village. **He** drives around the village in an old van. The fisherman sells fresh fish every day. One day, he was in front of an old woman's house. The van's engine stopped working, so the man couldn't start his van. He was sad and disappointed. The woman wanted to help. She could fix the engine because her father was a mechanic and taught her all about cars. The man was surprised. He thanked the woman and gave her ten fresh fish.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

Unit 6 What do you do?

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The main idea of the passage is about a ....

a teacher b farmer c fisherman d guide

2. The woman could fix the van's ....

a wheel b engine c seat d light

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Why was the man disappointed?

- -

4. What did the man give the woman?

- -

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. is - The - disappointed - boy.

- -

2. didn't - He - the - test - pass.

- -

3. gave - He - mom - fresh - ten - fish.

- -

4. old - The - fisherman - surprised - was.

- -

5 Add and circle the prime numbers:

اجمع وضع دائرة حول العدد اذا كان اولى:

1. 6 + 7 = (13)
2. 37 + 20 = ...
3. 70 + 9 = ...
4. 40 + 4 = ...
5. 10 + 7 = ...
6. 23 + 20 = ...
7. 32 + 28 = ...
8. 29 + 50 = ...



Lessons 4&5 ★ Writing ★ Project



Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



English	Arabic
quick	بسرعة / سريع
patient	صبور
ready	جاهز
student	طالب
polite	مهذب
hair	شعر
advice	نصيحة
teacher	مدرسة / مدرس

English	Arabic
world	العالم
different	مختلف
hard work	عمل شاق
life	حياة
show respect	يظهر الاحترام
favorite	مفضل
shelf	رف
surprising questions	أسئلة مفاجأة

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الافعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضي
change	يغير	changed
encourage	يشجع	encouraged
respect	يحترم	respected
ask	يسأل	asked
answer	يجيب	answered

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضي
think	يفكر	thought
teach	يعلم	taught
get off	ينزل من	got off

Study the following

1. I want to be a teacher. - أريد أن اصبح مدرس.
2. Students always ask surprising questions. - دائما ما يسأل الطلاب اسئلة مفاجئة.
3. Teachers need to think quickly. - يحتاج المدرسون أن يفكروا بسرعة.
4. They need to encourage their students. - يحتاجوا أن يشجعوا طلابهم.

5 They need to be very patient. - يحتاجو ان يتحلوا بالصبر.

6 A teacher can change their students' lives. - يستطيع المدرس أن يغير حياة طلابه.

7 A good teacher is always ready to learn. - المدرس الجيد يكون جاهز دائمًا للتعلم.

8 Everyone in the class knows different things.
- يعرف كل شخص فى الفصل أشياء مختلفة.

9 I respect the librarian. I put my books back on the shelf.
- احترم أمينة المكتبة. أعيد كتبي علي الرف.

10 I respect the cleaner. I don't throw trash.
- احترم عامل النظافة. لا ألقي القمامة (علي الأرض).

1 Think and answer: فكر وأجب:

1. What are the good and bad things about being a teacher?
- ما هى الأشياء الجيدة والسيئة فى وظيفة المدرس؟


استمع إلى المفردات:

When people ask me, "What do you want to do?" I answer: "I want to be a teacher. For me, it's the best job in the world."
For a teacher, every day is different.
Students always ask surprising questions. A teacher can change their students' lives so teachers need to be very patient. They work for many hours every day. It's hard work, but it's exciting. Teachers need to think quickly. They need to encourage their students. A good teacher is always ready to learn. Teachers teach their students, but students also teach their teachers.
Everyone in the class knows different things.

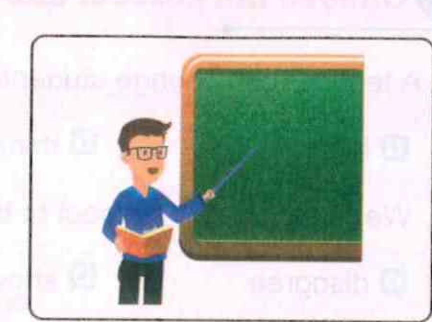


2 Read the poster. Do you agree or disagree?

اقرأ البوستر: هل تتفق أم تختلف؟



I respect the cleaner. I don't throw litter.



I respect the teacher. I listen to him carefully.

How to show respect
كيف اظهر الاحترام

I respect the bus driver. I say thank you when I get off the bus.



I respect the librarian. I put my books back on the shelf.





1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. A teacher can change students' ....
   - a hair
   - b things
   - c teeth
   - d lives
2. We .... respect to the people around us.
   - a disagree
   - b show
   - c talk
   - d work
3. A good teacher is always ready to ....
   - a sleep
   - b play
   - c learn
   - d drive
4. I don't throw litter because I respect the ....
   - a cleaner
   - b guide
   - c electrician
   - d dentist

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

ready - patient - encourage - parents

Teaching is one of the best jobs in the world. The teachers need to ❶ .... their students. The teachers need to be ❷ .... A good teacher is always ❸ .... to learn.

3 Read and match: اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 Teachers need	a. It's hard work.
2 Teachers encourage	b. their students.
3 I put books	c. on the shelf.
4 Teachers need to be	d. very patient.
	e. to think quickly.

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. people - show - We - to - older - respect.

   ----
2. throw - don't - I - litter.

   ----
3. to do - What - you - want - do?

   ----
4. questions - surprising - Students - ask - always.

   ----

5 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

do you want to be a teacher

----

6 Write an email of TWENTY FOUR (24) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب إيميل من (٢٤) كلمة عن:

The teacher's job مجاب عنه آخر الوحدة

hard - change

To your friend Adel. Your email address is medhat@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is adel@gmail.com

New Message

To -- Cc Bcc

From --

Subject --

Dear ----------,

Yours,

Review



Fishing صيد السمك









catch fish يصطاد سمك | net شبكة | fisherman صياد سمك | boat قارب

Tourism industry صناعة السياحة









tourism سياحة | guide مرشد سياحى | hotel فندق | transportation المواصلات

Farming الزراعة





farmer فلاح | pick يقطف

Education التعليم









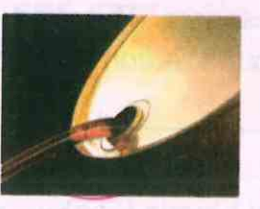




school مدرسة | teacher مدرسة | librarian أمينة مكتبة

Energy Resources مصادر الطاقة

Renewable متجددة







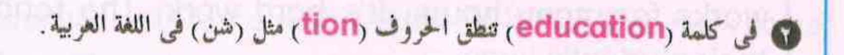
wave energy طاقة الأمواج | solar energy طاقة شمسية | wind energy طاقة الرياح

Non-renewable غير متجددة

oil بترول | coal فحم | gas غاز



ملاحظات على نطق بعض الكلمات



1. انطق كلمة (guide) مثل كلمة (ride) مع اختلاف أول صوت.
2. فى كلمة (education) تنطق الحروف (tion) مثل (شن) فى اللغة العربية.
3. انطق كلمة (engine) ينطق حرف (i) مثل حرف (i) فى كلمة (bin)

وحرف (e) الأخير لا ينطق.



مهارات الكتابة

Write a paragraph / an email of TWENTY FOUR (24) words.

Answers to Paragraphs / Emails

Lesson 1
The farmer

1. I'm a farmer. I wake up early every day. I pick fruit. I grow trees. I keep a lot of animals. I look after animals.

Lesson 2
Wind energy

2. Wind energy is important for us. It's a renewable resource. The wind energy produces electricity. It can grow again or never run out. We don't need to burn this resource.

Lessons 4,5
the teacher's job

3.

New Message

To	adel@gmail.com	Cc Bcc
From	medhat@gmail.com	
Subject	The teacher's job	

Dear Adel,

I want to be a teacher. The teacher works at school. The teacher works for many hours. It's hard work. The teacher can change their student's lives.

Yours,

Medhat

Activity Unit 6
The librarian

4. My sister is a librarian. She works in a school. She looks after all the books. Students like her very much. They respect her. They put their books back on the shelf.

Al-Azhar Exercises



الأسئلة الخاصة بالأزهر الشريف

A- Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer: استمع واختر:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. A good teacher is always ready to .... (sell - drive - learn)
2. Everyone in the .... knows different things. (park - class - shop)

B- Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialog: أقرأ وأكمل:

parents - polite - respect

Ahmed : Do you ------------------------ people around you?

Youssef : Yes, I should be ------------------------ .

Ahmed : Who teaches you to respect people?

Youssef : My ------------------------ teach me.

C- Reading Comprehension

3 Read and choose the correct answer: أقرأ واختار:

Fishing is my favorite hobby. I often go fishing without catching anything, but I'm not sad. I get up in the morning and walk to the river. I catch fish. Then, I go back home. I give the fish to my mother. She is happy and cooks delicious fish for us.

Choose the correct answer:

1. Fishing is my favorite................... . (subject - hobby - job)
2. I give the fish to my .... (mother - brother - father)
3. I often go .... without catching anything. (swimming - playing - fishing)
4. I get up in the morning and walk to the .... (lake - sea - river)
5. My mother is happy and cooks delicious .... for us. (meat - fish - rice)

D- Vocabulary and Structures

4 Choose the right answer from a, b, or c: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة

1. Gas is a .... energy.
   a solar b renewable c non-renewable
2. Teachers need to be ....
   a lazy b bad c patient
3. The guide works in the .... industry.
   a farming b energy c tourism
4. We .... the sound of the engine.
   a drove b gave c heard
5. A .... looks after all books.
   a farmer b librarian c guide

E- Writing

5 Rearrange the words to make correct sentences: اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. works - a school - Who - in?
2. grow - food - Farmers - the.
3. respect - I - bus - the - driver.
4. sells - fish - A fisherman - the market - in

6 Write a paragraph of Four (4) sentences about: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٤) أربعة جمل عن:

A fisherman





Activity On Unit 6

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

	True	False
1 My grandfather is a doctor.		
2 He wakes up early every day.		
3 My grandfather grows rice and vegetables.		
4 He sends a lot of the fruit to the factory		

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. A fisherman works .... the sea.
   a under b next c of d on
2. The solar energy is a .... energy.
   a renewable b non-renewable c coal d bad
3. A fisherman .... fish.
   a catches b plays c connects d fixes
4. A teacher needs to .... quickly.
   a eat b think c play d see

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

bus driver - respect - litter - world

There are many people around us. We should show ❶ .... to them. I respect the cleaner. I don't throw ❷ .... I respect the ❸ .... , I say thank you when I get off the bus.

4 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 Farmers	a. disobeyed his mom.
2 The bad boy	b. on the sea?
3 The boy is disappointed.	c. He didn't pass the test.
4 Who works	d. grow the food.
	e. friends.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

Unit 6 What do you do?

5 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

I'm Mohammed. I'm a plumber. I love my job. My job is very important for everyone. I fix the pipes so you can have water. We need water to have a shower and brush our teeth. Water is very important to our life.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Mohammed is a ....

a farmer   b plumber   c teacher   d vet

2. Mohammed's job is very ....

a important   b bad   c scary   d high

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Who fixes the pipes?

----

4. Why do we need water?

----

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. you - to be – Do – a teacher - want?

----

2. respect - the – I – teacher.

----

3. a man - a van – There's – in.

----

7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

why do you want to be a doctor

----

8 Write a paragraph of TWENTY FOUR (24) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٢٤) كلمة عن:

The librarian

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الوحدة

respect - shelf

Review 2




Objectives of the Review 2

أهداف المراجعة

Lesson 1: Listening and speaking

- To revise the vocabulary and language from Units 4 - 6.

- يراجع التلاميذ المفردات والقواعد اللغوية الموجوده بالوحدات من ٤ إلى ٦.

Lesson 2: Phonics and Assessment

1. To revise the key letter sounds from Units 4 - 6.

- يراجع التلاميذ الصوتيات من الوحدات ٤ إلى ٦.

2. To evaluate progress in Units 4 - 6.

- يتم تقييم مدى نجاح التلاميذ فى استيعاب الوحدات من ٤ الى ٦.






★ Units 4 - 5 & 6

1 Listen and write the words:

استمع واكتب الكلمة :



استمع إلى المفردات:



1- .... 2- .... 3- ....

4- .... 5- .... 6- ....

7- .... 8- .... 9- ....

10- .... 11- .... 12- ....

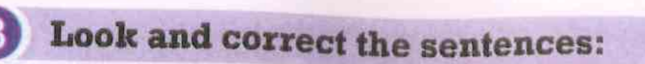
2 Look at the pictures and answer the questions:

انظر للصور واجب عن الاسئلة :





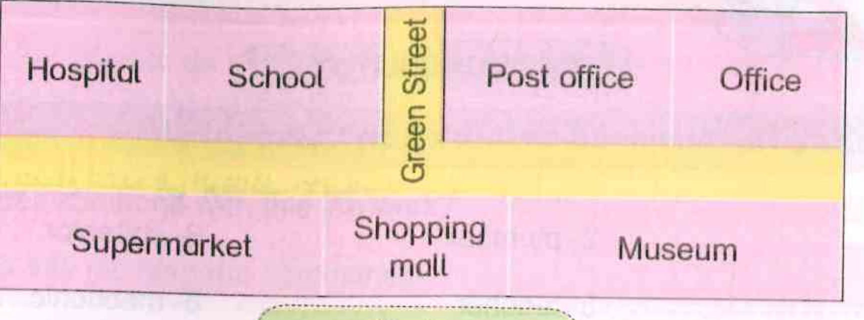

1. What's the mechanic doing? ....
2. What's the mail carrier doing? ....
3. What's the electrician doing? ....
4. What's the driver doing? ....



3 Look and correct the sentences:

انظر وصحح الجمل :

انظر إلى هذه الخريطة ثم صحح الجمل الآتية :





5. The hospital is between the school. ....
6. The school is next to the museum. ....
7. The park is under the shopping mall. ....
8. The supermarket is behind the school. ....

4 Listen. Write the start and finish:

استمع واكتب البداية والنهاية :

استمع للنص الآتى واكتب البداية والنهاية فى الخريطة السابقة :

استمع إلى النص:

Tapescript نص الاستماع

1. Go straight ahead. Turn right, go past the school. It's on the right.
2. Go straight ahead, keep going. Go past the post office. It's on the left.
3. Walk past the post office and turn right. The entrance is on the left, on Green Street.

1. Start: Green Street Finish: hospital
2. Start: .... Finish: office
3. Start: .... Finish: ....

5 Match the sentences to the picture. Then write this is, that is, these are, or those are:

صل الجمل بالصور ثم اكتب اسم الأشارة المناسب :

1. , a screwdriver.
2. .... my tape measure.
3. .... our tools.
4. .... my tools.

a 
b 
c 

1
d 



Units 4 - 5 & 6

PRONUNCIATION

1 Underline the stressed syllables in these jobs:

ضع خط تحت المقطع المشدد فى الوظائف الاتية :

1- doctor
2- plumber
3- collector
4- driver
5- teacher
6- mechanic

2 Point and say. Then write these words:

اشر وقل ثم اكتب هذه الكلمات:



1 ....



2 ....



3 ....



4 ....

TERM 1: PROJECT

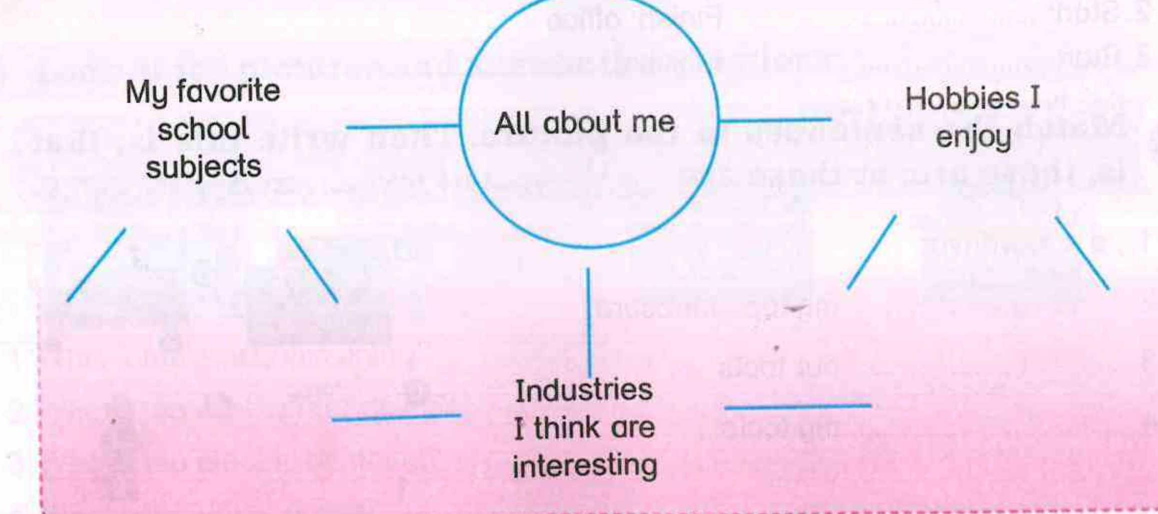
1 Read and think about the project:

إقرأ ثم فكر فى عمل المشروع:

Think about what job you want to do when you're older. Think about how it helps the community. Write a message to yourself in the future.

2 Think about what you know and what you enjoy. Complete the diagram:

فكر فيما تعرفه وما تستمتع به. أكمل الجدول:





3 Read, think, and complete:

اقرأ وفكر واكمل:

What do you want to be?	
What do you need to do this job? Think about: • Do you need to go to university? • Do you need to practice?	
Where does someone with this job work?	
How does this job help the community?	

4 Work in a group. Present your job:

اعمل فى مجموعات وقدم وظيفتك:

I want to be a teacher.

5 Look, write, and complete. Write a message to yourself in the future:

انظر واكتب واكمل: اكتب رسالة عن نفسك فى المستقبل:

Dear ....,

I will work in a .... I want to be a .... because ....

....

I need to .... to be a good ....

I will help people ....

I hope you think your job is interesting.

Lots of love,

....

Put the letter in an envelope and then put it somewhere safe.

Read it when you're older.

on Units (4,5 & 6)

8 Activity



1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

	True	False
1 Amr is a farmer.		
2 Amr uses a screwdriver.		
3 Amr studied electricity.		
4 Amr loves his job.		

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Supermarkets .... food to customers.
   a sell b eat c drink d draw
2. Never .... anything electric with wet hands.
   a touches b touched c touch d touching
3. .... are the plumber's tools.
   a That b Those c This d Then
4. The mechanic .... cars.
   a fixes b plays c eats d draws

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

front - flowers - next - between

I live in a big house. It's ❶ .... to my school. There is a park in ❷ .... of the school. There are lots of ❸ .... and trees in the park.

4 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 The garbage collector	a. fixes pipes.
2 My mom and dad	b. work in an office.
3 The mechanics fix	c. cars.
4 The plumber	d. collects trash.
	e. homes.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.



5 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Ahmed is a farmer. He wakes up early every day. He goes to his farm on his tractor. He grows oranges. All year, he looks after the trees and he gives them water and nutrients. Then, he picks the fruit. Ahmed sends a lot of the fruit to the factory to make orange juice. Ahmed is a good farmer.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The main idea of the passage is about a ....
   a farmer b teacher c plumber d driver
2. Ahmed sends a lot of fruit to the ....
   a hospital b factory c school d club

B. Answer the following questions:

3. How does Ahmed go to his farm?
   ....
4. What does Ahmed grow?
   ....

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملا صحيحة:

1. the tourism - Samir - industry - in - works.
   ....
2. save - you - How - electricity - do?
   ....
3. mechanic - is - doing - What - the?
   ....

7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

how fast can electricity travel ....

8 Write a paragraph of TWENTY FOUR (24) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٢٤) كلمة عن:

A teacher

students - helps

....
....
....
....

1 محافظة القاهرة

إدارة الشرابية

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

	True	False
1 Spiders are helpful for farmers.		
2 Snakes are dangerous.		
3 Crocodiles eat insects.		
4 Pelicans don't eat fish.		

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة

1. I like .... very much. We make sugar out of it.
   a onions b rice c watermelons d sugarcane
2. A .... helps children find books in the library.
   a fisherman b dentist c librarian d plumber
3. .... apples are on the tree. I can't get them.
   a That b This c Those d Than
4. An elephant is .... than a bird. It's about 2000 kg.
   a big b bigger c biggest d as big

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

living room - fantastic - building - relax

We moved to a new apartment. It's 1 .... My favorite room is the bedroom. I can 2 .... and do my homework quietly. My mom's favorite room is the 3 .... with the balcony.

4 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 I live in a city	a. tomatoes and potatoes.
2 The museum is next	b. called Hurghada.
3 Is a mango tree	c. to the supermarket.
4 Farmers can grow	d. renewable or non-renewable?
	e. grow into a big tree.

5 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة

My friend Abeer works at a supermarket near my house. My family and I see her every week when we buy food. Abeer checks the food is fresh. She helps us when we can't find something. She is very kind and happy.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Abeer works at a ....
   a school b supermarket c hospital d bank
2. We see Abeer every ....
   a week b month c day d year

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What does Abeer check? ....
4. When does Abeer help us? ....

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة:

1. farmers - do - What - grow? ....
2. being - a - I - plumber - love ....
3. fast - travel - How - electricity - can? ....

7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

where do you live

8 Write a paragraph of TWENTY FOUR (24) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٢٤) كلمة عن:

The fennec fox

fur - desert



إدارة الصف

2 محافظة الجيزة

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

	True	False
1 We grow sugarcane in the balcony.		
2 We water the plants every Friday.		
3 The roots grow under the soil.		
4 Tomatoes have seeds inside.		

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. I think cats are .... than dogs.
   a nice b nicer c nicest d very nice
2. My uncle lives in a .... He can see water everywhere.
   a cave b tent c houseboat d desert
3. I eat fruit .... exercise.
   a but b and c so d too
4. A: .... is the book? B: It's next to the chair.
   a What b Who c When d Where

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

sleep - without - flat - carry

My favorite animal is the camel. Camels can live 1 .... water for a long time. They have 2 .... feet to help them walk on the sand. They can 3 .... people and things across the desert.

4 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 We go to the hospital	a. small fish.
2 The pelican eats	b. cars and buses.
3 A mechanic fixes	c. very helpful.
4 My house is	d. behind the bank.
	e. when we are sick.

5 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Nada moved to a new apartment with her family. The new apartment is big. It is near Nada's school. It has two bedrooms, a living room, a kitchen and a bathroom. Nada's favorite room is the living room. She can play games and watch TV in it. There is a big balcony, too. Nada can see the street from the balcony.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The new apartment has .... bedrooms.
   a two b three c four d five
2. Nada can see the street from the ....
   a bedroom b balcony c kitchen d bathroom

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What is Nada's favorite room? ....
4. Where is the new apartment? ....

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. do - you - Where - work? ....
2. are - bigger - Elephants - dogs - than . ...
3. rice - We - in - Egypt - grow. ....

7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للاتي:

maggie works at the supermarket ....

8 Write an email of TWENTY FOUR (24) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب إيميل من (٢٤) كلمة عن:

Horses

eyes - grass

To your friend Mustafa. Your email address is hazem@yahoo.com and your friend's email address is mustafa@gmail.com

New Message

To .... Cc Bcc

From ....

Subject ....

Dear ....,

....

....

....

Yours, ...

إدارة الخانكة



3 محافظة القليوبية

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

	True	False
1 I like unhealthy food.		
2 I always get up early.		
3 Dad cooks healthy food.		
4 We eat bananas and grapes for dessert.		

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. The roots grow .... the soil, we can't see them well.
   a under b above c in front of d opposite
2. This .... is near my house. It sells good food.
   a post office b living room c supermarket d school
3. The fennec fox .... thick fur.
   a have b has c having d are
4. I don't eat fish, ... I like meat.
   a but b and c too d so

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

horns - small - beaks - birds

Pelicans are amazing animals. They are (1) ---------- . They eat (2) ---------- fish. They have (3) ---------- to catch fish from the river. I can feed them at the zoo.

4 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 Who works	a. the east of Egypt.
2 All jobs are	b. in a tent in the desert.
3 Hurghada is in	c. in our bodies.
4 Some people live	d. on the sea?
	e. very important.

5 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Rhim gazelles look very beautiful. They live in the Sahara Desert. They walk around looking for grass, leaves and plants to eat. They have big ears and long horns. <u>They</u> have yellow-white coats which protect them from the sun. They don't need to drink a lot of water like camels.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Rhim gazelles eat ....
   a meat b leaves c small animals d insects
2. The underlined pronoun "<u>They</u>" refers to ....
   a camels b horns c rhim gazelles d ears

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What color are rhim gazelles ?
   ----
4. Where do rhim gazelles live?
   ----

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملا صحيحة:

1. swam - saved - child - Dad - and - the.
   ----
2. clothes - at - We - mall - buy - the shopping.
   ----
3. more - camels - horses - beautiful - Are - than?
   ----

7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للاتي:

what s your favorite room?

----

8 Write a paragraph of TWENTY FOUR (24) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٢٤) كلمة عن:

Life on a farm

plants - animals

إدارة بلقاس

4 محافظة الدقهلية

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

	True	False
1 The bus driver needs the mechanic.		
2 The mechanic fixes the bus.		
3 A mail carrier bakes bread.		
4 The garbage collector keeps our streets dirty.		

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. The bear lifts its .... to eat the fish.
   a beak b teeth c paw d fur
2. It's hot today. We need to turn on the ....
   a bus b van c fan d fun
3. .... is a small bird. It's flying in the sky.
   a These b That c Those d Than
4. Camels .... large, flat feet.
   a has b having c have d is

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

encourages - patient - surprising - most

Mr Hany is my English teacher. I like him very much. He is very 1 .... He 2 .... us to be good at English. I want to be a teacher like Mr Hany. I think it's the 3 .... important job in the world.

4 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 A plumber	a. helping people?
2 Never put anything	b. connects the pipes and faucets.
3 Do you like	c. work in the repair shop.
4 These mechanics	d. into the socket.
	e. delivers letters.

5 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة

My name is Mazen. My father is an electrician. It's a great thing to be an electrician. His work is very tiring, but he is hapy when he helps people fix their lights and watch TV. He earns enough money to live well. On the other hand, his job is very dangerous and needs a special skill. He always advises me not to touch anything electrical with wet hands.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The electrician's work is ....
   a tiring b easy c happy d bad
2. My father earns .... money to live well.
   a a lot b little c enough d any

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What is the electrician's advice?

....

4. Why does the electrician need a special skill?

....

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. driver - me - takes - to - A bus - school.

....

2. can - see - lightning - We - of - a flash.

....

3. job - Which - the - is - difficult - most?

....

7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

i need to repaint my bedroom

....

8 Write a paragraph of TWENTY FOUR (24) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٢٤) كلمة عن:

Tomatoes

grow - seeds

....

....

....

....

5 محافظة الشرقية

إدارة الصالحية

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

	True	False
1 Crocodiles are small.		
2 Spiders are very helpful.		
3 Snakes and crocodiles are dangerous.		
4 Crocodiles eat insects, birds and lizards.		

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Where .... you live?
   a do b does c is d are
2. Horses are .... animals. They can carry heavy things.
   a weak b strong c bad d tall
3. Mr Ibrahim .... his house yellow.
   a recleaned b repainted c replanted d redo
4. These .... my father's tools.
   a is b am c are d was

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

biggest - Nile - family - fastest

My friend Saleh lives in a village. It's next to the 1 .... He lives with his small 2 .... He has a brother and a sister. He lives in a house. It is the 3 .... house in the village. Saleh is a good boy. He helps his mom.

4 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 I want to play	a. fixes ears.
2 Camels have	b. from the supermarket.
3 A builder builds	c. the houses.
4 We buy food	d. football with you.
	e. large, flat feet.

5 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Waleed lives in a big house with his family. There is a big garden in the house. In the garden, his grandpa grows many different kinds of vegetables and fruits. He grows tomatoes, carrots, and onions. Waleed's favorite healthy food is mango. He likes to eat it and use it to make delicious juice. Waleed likes chocolate, too. He knows it's unhealthy. But he thinks it's OK.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Waleed lives in a ....
   a farm b house c garden d tent
2. Waleed likes .... , but he knows it's unhealthy.
   a cola b mango c honey d chocolate

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Is there a big garden in the house? ....
4. What's Waleed's favorite healthy food? ....

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. biggest - is - the - elephant - The - animal.
   ....
2. in - Egypt - sugarcane - We - grow.
   ....
3. and - leaves - plants - Rhim gazelles - eat.
   ....

7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

egyptian farmers produce many things ....

8 Write a paragraph of TWENTY FOUR (24) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٢٤) كلمة عن:

The jobs around us

Questions

1- What are different jobs around us?
2- What's your favorite job?

....
....
....
....
....

إدارة شرق كفر الشيخ

6 محافظة كفر الشيخ

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

	True	False
1 Farmers grow food for us to eat.		
2 Farmers work in the desert habitat.		
3 There is much rain in the desert habitat.		
4 Plants near rivers need a lot of water.		

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Tomatoes have .... inside.
   a flowers b leaves c seeds d pens
2. Elephants are .... than dogs.
   a thin b thinner c big d bigger
3. Make sure your hands are .... before touching anything electrical.
   a dry b wet c scary d huge
4. Adel is a/an .... He connects pipes.
   a plumber b mail carrier c electrician d teacher

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

video - eat - exercise - drink

I like healthy food. I 1 ---------- a lot. I never play 2 ---------- games. I drink a lot of water and milk, but I never 3 ---------- cola. I like chocolate, but I don't eat too much.

4 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 The fennec fox loses	a. fixes the cars.
2 The tent is made	b. a place where I learn.
3 The school is	c. in the balcony.
4 A mechanic	d. heat from its ears.
	e. of cloth.

5 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

There are many jobs in our country. They are all important in our life. For example, the garbage collector cleans our streets. The plumber fixes the faucets and pipes. The bus driver takes us to school. The teacher teaches us many subjects.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The main idea in the text is about ....
   a electricity b jobs c water d children
2. A .... helps you keep your street clean.
   a farmer b teacher c garbage collector d plumber

B. Answer the following questions:

3. How does the plumber help us? ------------------------
4. Who drives you to school? ------------------------

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملا صحيحة:

1. the – Where – post – is – office?
   ----
2. thinner – are – Dogs – than – elephants.
   ----
3. food – in – I – the – cook – kitchen.
   ----

7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للاتي:

why do plants need sunlight and water ------------------------

8 Write an email of TWENTY FOUR (24) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب إيميل من (٢٤) كلمة عن:

Camels

flat feet - without water

To your friend Youssef. Your email address is samir@gmail.com and your friend's email address is youssef@yahoo.com

New Message

To ------------------------ Cc Bcc

From ------------------------

Subject ------------------------

Dear ----------,

Yours,

إدارة دمياط الجديدة



7 محافظة دمياط

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

	True	False
1 My mother is a teacher.		
2 My mother meets a lot of students.		
3 Being a librarian has pros and cons.		
4 My mother always sits inside.		

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. The hospital is .... to the school. I can get to it quickly.
   a front b next c between d behind
2. .... on the fan. It's very hot.
   a Turn b Burn c Think d Put
3. .... children are going to school.
   a That b These c This d Then
4. He .... the summer very much.
   a like b likes c don't like d hate

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

special - feet - fur - feathers

Camels are amazing animals. They have large, flat 1 ...., so they can walk on the sand. Camels can live without water for a long time. They have 2 .... ways to close their noses and eyes to stop the sand from coming in. We can use their 3 .... to make clothes. Camels can help us to carry things and people.

4 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 A palace	a. grow rice, onions and tomatoes.
2 Egyptian farmers	b. we sometimes see a flash of lightning.
3 To be honest,	c. is a place where an emperor lives.
4 In a storm,	d. special food for us.
	e. you shouldn't lie.

5 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Children shouldn't go near electricity. It's very dangerous. The electrician is the only person who can fix our things because he knows how to work safely with electricity. He is careful when he does his job. He can fix old radios, cell phones and anything has electricity. He always carries his screwdriver to open his things with.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Electricity is .... for children.
   a safe b healthy c dangerous d easy
2. The electrician always carries a ....
   a pen b screwdriver c tap measure d bag

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What does the electrician fix?
....
4. Why is the electrician the only person works with electricity?
....

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. show - to - We - people - older - respect.
....
2. does - the plant - grow - What - need to?
....
3. drives - The - many - driver - places - to.
....

7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للاتي:

Is hurghada a city or a village
....

8 Write a paragraph of TWENTY FOUR (24) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٢٤) كلمة عن:

Damietta governorate

farmers - raise

....
....
....
....
....

8 محافظة البحيرة

إدارة النوبارية

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

	True	False
1 Papyrus is a very special plant.		
2 Romans used papyrus to make paper.		
3 Papyrus doesn't need a lot of water.		
4 Papyrus needs warm weather to grow quickly.		

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. A snake is more .... than a fox.
   a bigger b longest c taller d dangerous
2. My uncle is a .... He delivers letters.
   a teacher b mail carrier c dentist d guide
3. Green plants .... important for us.
   a is b am c are d was
4. Never touch anything electrical with .... hands.
   a cute b wet c cold d dry

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

next - station - between - in front of

In my town, the shopping mall is on the other side of the 1 __________ , so the station is 2 __________ the supermarket and the shopping mall. My dad's office is 3 __________ to the park. My school is near my house. I love my town.

4 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 Where is your school?	a. in the Sahara Desert.
2 Rhim gazelles live	b. It's next to the park.
3 There are three	c. someone tries to win.
4 In a competition,	d. houses in front of the mall.
	e. I play it on Friday.

5 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Hi, I'm Sally. My grandparents live in a cave. The rooms of their house are in the rock. **Inside**, it's never too hot or too cold. My aunt moved to a new apartment. She is very happy because she has a big balcony. My friend and his family live on a houseboat. It's small, but he loves living on water. I love living in a house because it's big. I can play outside with my brother and sister.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined word "**inside**" refers to a/an ....
   a apartment b cave c school d houseboat
2. The balcony is ....
   a big b small c dirty d hot

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Why is Sally's aunt happy?
   ____
4. Is the houseboat big?
   ____

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملا صحيحة:

1. a village - the Nile - next to - live - I - in.
   ____
2. is - than - The eagle - the mouse - heavier.
   ____
3. is - most - What - the - flower - beautiful ?
   ____

7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للاتي:

the hospital is next to the school
____

8 Write a paragraph of TWENTY FOUR (24) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٢٤) كلمة عن:

My city, Alexandria

beautiful - beaches

____
____
____
____



إدارة بيا

9 محافظة بني سويف

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

	True	False
1 My father is a teacher.		
2 My father gets up very early every day.		
3 My father goes out on his car and catches fish.		
4 My father comes back and sells his fish.		

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. .... birds are so far. I can't see them well.
   a That b Those c This d Then
2. My grandparents like to live in the desert. They live in a big ....
   a tent b apartment c garden d houseboat
3. We all respect the .... He cleans our streets.
   a mechanic b bus driver c plumber d garbage collector
4. These seeds .... very small.
   a am b is c are d was

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

kinder - saw - hungry - catch

Yesterday, I saw a dog and a cat in the street. They were 1 .... They both looked at some meat next to the restaurant. The cat ran to 2 .... the meat first, but the dog was faster than the cat and caught the meat. The cat was angry, but the dog was 3 .... and gave the meat to the cat.

4 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 My mom and dad	a. delivering letters.
2 That mail carrier is	b. in our bathroom.
3 I need to redo	c. work in an office.
4 These are the faucets	d. the mechanic's tools.
	e. my homework.

5 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

When Tarek was a baby, his mother bought him many blocks. Tarek liked to play with the blocks. He put one block on top of another. When he was ten years old, he started making things. He made a big house, tables, chairs and a lot of things with those blocks. Now he is thirty years old and he is an architect. He works in an office in Giza and likes his job.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Tarek's job is a/an ....
   a electrician b teacher c architect d plumber
2. Tarek's mother bought .... for Tarek.
   a trains b blocks c dolls d fish

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Where does Tarek work?

----

4. How old was Tarek when he started making things?

----

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. on - Who - sea - works - the?

----

2. seeds - have - Tomatoes - inside.

----

3. the - clean - The cleaners - school - keep.

----

7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للاتي:

do you want to be healthy

----

8 Write a paragraph of TWENTY FOUR (24) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٢٤) كلمة عن:

Different jobs

bus driver - mechanic

----

10 محافظة المنيا

إدارة سمالوط

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

	True	False
1 My brother works in the education industry.		
2 My brother's job is to explain the history.		
3 My brother can travel to many places.		
4 My brother doesn't like his job.		

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Some birds have long ....
   a legs b horns c faces d beaks
2. A .... works in the sea or rivers. He catches fish.
   a teacher b guide c fisherman d plumber
3. Crocodiles are .... dangerous than fish.
   a most b more c least d much
4. .... books are useful.
   a That b This c These d Than

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

thick - deserts - hear - loses

The fennec fox is an Egyptian desert animal. It lives in the 1 .... of North Africa. Its ears are big to 2 .... insects. The fennec fox's 3 .... fur keeps it warm.

4 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 Spiders	a. grow in the desert habitat.
2 Acacia trees	b. fixes pipes and faucets.
3 A plumber	c. when the fan doesn't work.
4 We call the electrician	d. fixes cars.
	e. eat small insects.

5 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Camels are amazing animals. They are perfect for the desert. Camels have large, flat feet so they can walk on the sand. Camels can live without water for a long time. They help us to carry things and people to cross the desert. Their milk is delicious. We can use camels' fur to make clothes.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Camels are amazing ....
   a plants b animals c habitats d insects
2. Camels have large flat .... to walk on the sand.
   a noses b legs c feet d tails

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Why are camels perfect for the desert?

----

4. How are camels helpful?

----

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. burnt - pancakes - I - the.

----

2. school - The hospital - to - is - the - next.

----

3. sunflowers - Why - grow - farmers - do?

----

7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

what does papyrus need

----

8 Write a paragraph of TWENTY FOUR (24) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٢٤) كلمة عن:

My town "Hurghada"

Sahl Hasheeh - bazaars

----

11 محافظة أسيوط

إدارة ديروط

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

	True	False
1 My grandfather was a good fisherman.		
2 My grandfather planted a lot of seeds.		
3 My grandfather's farm was in a town.		
4 My grandfather bought crops from the market.		

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Can you .... me?
   a helps b helping c help d helped
2. Ali cuts down the trees to get ....
   a wind b electricity c wood d wool
3. We send letters at the ....
   a school b hospital c station d post office
4. There .... a cat next to the chair.
   a are b is c were d does
5. .... right. It's next to the bank.
   a Turned b Turns c Turn d Turning

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

checks - helpful - breakfast - speaks

My sister Mona works at the supermarket. She's kind and 1 .... She gets up at six o'clock. She has 2 .... and walks to the supermarket. It's near our house. She 3 .... the food is fresh and helps people when they can't find something.

4 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 A guide works	a. live in a city.
2 A mail carrier	b. in the tourism industry.
3 Never put anything	c. pipes and faucets.
4 I have to fix	d. into a socket.
	e. delivers letters.

5 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Nabil lives in a house near the Nile. One day, Nabil and his brother Emad were watching the boats from the balcony, Nabil saw a small child fell into the river from a boat. The child shouted quickly. Nabil called his dad. Nabil's dad ran and jumped into the river. **He** swam and saved the child. The child thanked Nabil and his dad.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The child fell into the river and ....
   a swam b shouted c played d ran
2. The underlined word "**He**" refers to ....
   a the child b Nabil c Nabil's dad d Emad

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Where's Nabil's house?
   ----
4. Why did the child thank Nabil and his dad?
   ----

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. catch - the - Fishermen - fish.
   ----
2. station - Where - the - is?
   ----
3. the fish - people - to - The markets - sell - the.
   ----

7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

i think the rose is the most beautiful flower
----

8 Write a paragraph of TWENTY FOUR (24) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٢٤) كلمة عن:

A healthy meal

1- What's your favorite meal?
2- What healthy food do you like?

إدارة المنتزة

12 محافظة الاسكندرية

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

	True	False
1 Noha likes tennis.		
2 Noha doesn't eat healthy food.		
3 Noha isn't a good player.		
4 Noha plays football.		

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. We send letters at the ....
   a school b hospital c station d post office
2. The mechanic .... buses and cars.
   a fix b fixes c fixing d are fixing
3. I sleep in a big .... It has two beds.
   a bathroom b bedroom c cave d kitchen
4. Which animal is the .... dangerous than a fox?
   a much b many c most d more

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

live - leaves - nose - coat

The elephant is a big animal. It has a long 1.......... and big ears. Elephants need to 2.......... in very large areas because they eat and drink so much. They eat grass and 3.......... .

4 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 The eagle is a bird	a. in the empty pot.
2 The emperor gave	b. and it can fly easily.
3 Put the seeds	c. and she likes chocolate, too.
4 Gamila likes ice cream	d. a seed to each gardener.
	e. keeps the school clean.

5 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Hisham and his brother Amr have a big farm near Alexandria. They grow many kinds of fruit like bananas, apples and mangoes. They like going to the farm and playing under the trees. One day, Amr wanted to cut down the trees to sell the wood, but Hisham was angry. Hisham stopped his brother and advised him to grow more trees.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The main idea in the passage in about ....
   a cutting trees b growing mangoes c keeping animals d playing under trees
2. Hisham and Amr grow many kinds of ....
   a vegetables b rice c fruit d dessert

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Why did Amr want to cut down the trees? ....
4. What did Hisham advise Amr to do? ....

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة:

1. the city - very - Life - noisy - in - is. ....
2. do - think - a plant - Why - dies - you? ....
3. smaller - the - is - camel - than - The horse ....

7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

There s a man in a van ....

8 Write an email of TWENTY FOUR (24) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب إيميل من (٢٤) كلمة عن:

wind energy - gas and oil

Renewable and non-renewable energy

To your friend Abdullah. Your email address is mustafa@yahoo.com and your friend's email address is abdullah@gmail.com

New Message

To .... Cc Bcc

From ....

Subject ....

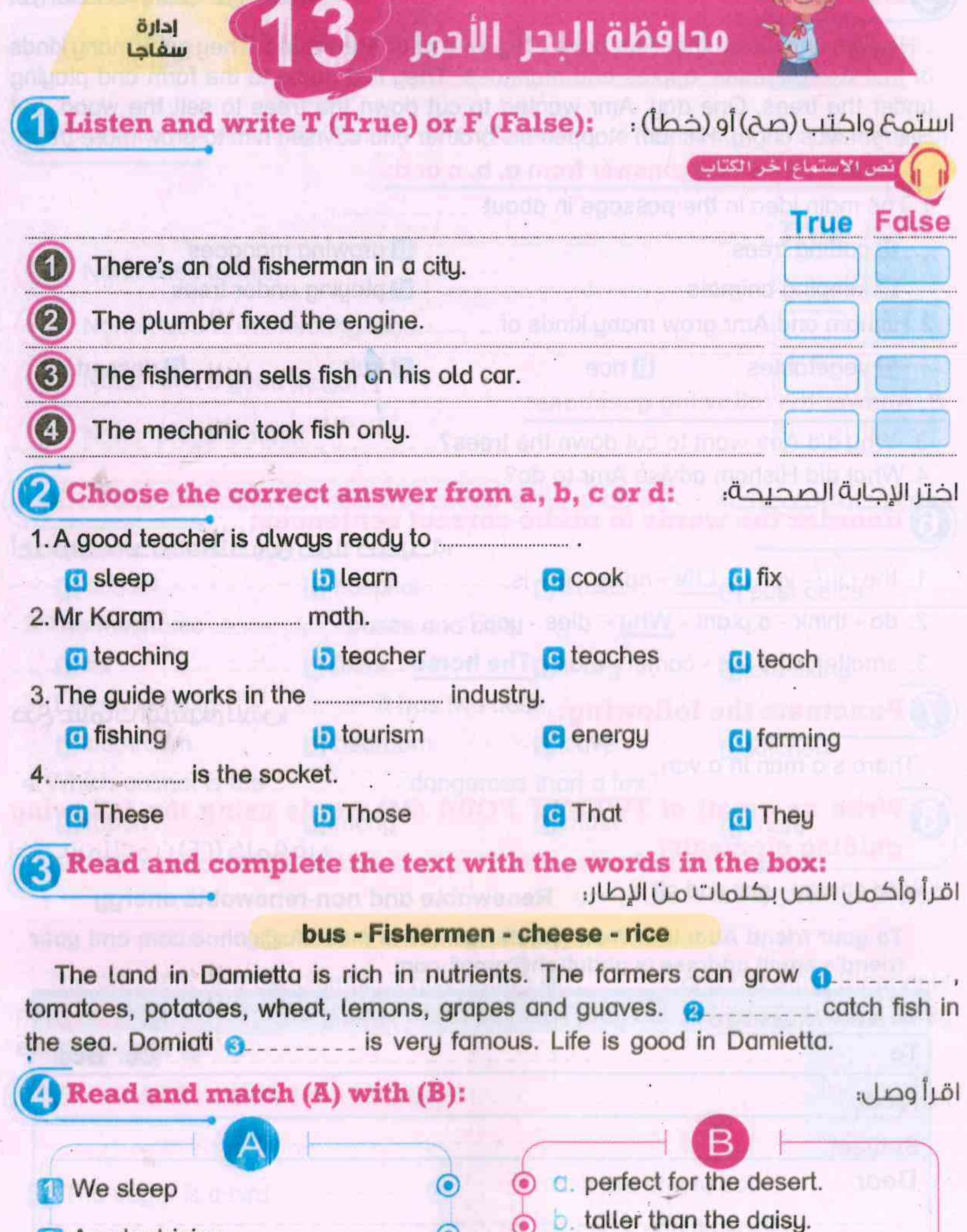
Dear ....,

....

....

....

Yours, ...



إدارة سفاجا

13 محافظة البحر الأحمر

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

		True	False
1	There's an old fisherman in a city.		
2	The plumber fixed the engine.		
3	The fisherman sells fish on his old car.		
4	The mechanic took fish only.		

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. A good teacher is always ready to ....
   a sleep b learn c cook d fix
2. Mr Karam .... math.
   a teaching b teacher c teaches d teach
3. The guide works in the .... industry.
   a fishing b tourism c energy d farming
4. .... is the socket.
   a These b Those c That d They

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

bus - Fishermen - cheese - rice

The land in Damietta is rich in nutrients. The farmers can grow 1 ...., tomatoes, potatoes, wheat, lemons, grapes and guaves. 2 .... catch fish in the sea. Domiati 3 .... is very famous. Life is good in Damietta.

4 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 We sleep	a. perfect for the desert.
2 An electrician	b. taller than the daisy.
3 Camels are	c. connects the electricity.
4 The sunflower is	d. to buy food.
	e. in the bedroom.

5 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة وأجب عن الأسئلة:

I'm Sara. I live with my family in Safaga. It's in the east of Egypt on the Red Sea. It's a small town. In Safaga, there is a beach and there are a lot of interesting things to do. Many tourists visit Safaga and go on safaris. They can swim in the sea. There are many bazaars and many hotels. My father is a guide so he can see many tourists. He speaks English well.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Safaga is a .... town.
   a big b boring c small d cold
2. Sara's father speaks .... well.
   a English b Arabic c Chinese d French

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Where is Safaga?
   ....
4. What can tourists do in the sea?
   ....

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. animal - The - elephant - is - the biggest.
   ....
2. catches - Which - first - animal - the fish?
   ....
3. jobs - interesting - Some - very - are
   ....

7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

On saturday ahmed went to the park.
....

8 Write a paragraph of TWENTY FOUR (24) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٢٤) كلمة عن:

Your new apartment

bedroom - street

....
....
....
....
....

14 محافظة السويس

إدارة الأربعين

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

	True	False
1 Ahmed lives in Cairo.		
2 Ahmed is in primary four.		
3 Ahmed's mother is a doctor.		
4 Ahmed's father works in hospital.		

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. We love our teacher because he is always ....
   a angry b bad c sad d patient
2. How .... it work?
   a do b does c are d were
3. Look, ... bird is flying.
   a there b that c those d they
4. The .... are swimming in the river.
   a swans b sweets c shoes d slippers

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

plays - market - on - catches

My name is Hatem. My uncle is a fisherman. He wakes up early every day. He goes out 1 .... his boat and 2 .... fish. He goes home with a lot of fish. He sells some fish at the 3 .... He cooks some fish and eats his lunch. My uncle likes his job because it's fun. I want to be a fisherman when I grow up.

4 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 Honesty is more important	a. to cook.
2 There's a plant	b. at the supermarket.
3 We can buy food	c. to learn.
4 We go to school	d. than winning.
	e. behind the couch.

5 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة وأجب عن الأسئلة:

My name is Hend. I'm in grade four. I live in a big house with my family. We have three bedrooms and two bathrooms. My mum cooks food in the kitchen. We watch TV in the living room. My favorite room is my bedroom. I like to read and do my homework in my bedroom. I like to help my father on the farm. He grows tomatoes and onions for us.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Hend's father grows .... and onions.
   a mangoes b potatoes c tomatoes d dates
2. Hend's favorite room is the ....
   a living room b kitchen c bathroom d bedroom

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What grade is Hend in?
   ----
4. Where does Hend's mother cook food?
   ----

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة

1. huge - The - and - scary - crocodile - is.
   ----
2. next - post office - to - the - The library - is.
   ----
3. keep - cleaners - clean - The - school - the.
   ----

7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

my village is on the Nile

----

8 Write a paragraph of TWENTY FOUR (24) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٢٤) كلمة عن:

Camels

strong - desert

إدارة أخميم

15 محافظة سوهاج

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

	True	False
1 Laila played with blocks when she was a baby.		
2 Laila made a little house for her dog.		
3 Laila always carried a tape measure.		
4 Laila wants to be electrician.		

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Forty years ago, the land .... very dry.
   a has b had c was d is
2. I think beans are more .... than potatoes.
   a thinner b smaller c taller d delicious
3. What's Damietta famous .... ?
   a to b for c at d on
4. A snake is .... dangerous than a fox.
   a least b much c more d most

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

plumber - delivers - electrician - mechanic

All jobs are important in our country. A 1 ---------- fixes our cars. A garbage collector takes away all garbage. A mail carrier 2 ---------- letters and parcels. A bus driver drives students to school. An 3 ---------- connects electricity to our homes.

4 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 It's dangerous to touch	a. need a lot of water.
2 Plants near rivers and lakes	b. and drops its seeds.
3 Rhim gazelles live	c. fixes your car.
4 The sunflower dies	d. in the Sahara Desert.
	e. electricity with your wet hands.

5 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

There are a lot of animals that live in the desert. Rhim gazelles are one of those animals that lives in the Sahara Desert. They are beautiful animals. They have big ears and long horns. They have yellow-white coats to <u>protect</u> them from the sun. They can walk easily on the sand. Rhim gazelles can live about 14 years. They eat grass, leaves and plants.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined word "**protect**" means
   a save b fix c feed d send
2. They have yellow-white ....
   a coats b feet c ears d horns

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What do rhim gazelles have on their heads?
----
4. How long can rhim gazelles live?
----

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملا صحيحة:

1. plants - to make - We - green - use - the land.
----
2. favorite - living room - is - My - room - the.
----
3. How - use - safely - can - electricity - we?
----

7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للاتى:

why does the bear look angry --

8 Write a paragraph of TWENTY FOUR (24) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٢٤) كلمة عن:

Healthy food

vegetables - fruits

----

16 الإدارة المركزية لمنطقة الأقصر الأزهرية



(A) Listening

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1 Listen and choose: استمع واختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. The .... is the tallest animal.
   a giraffe b lion c crocodile
2. Crocodiles' bodies are ....
   a tall b long c small

(B) Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialog: اقرأ واكمل الحوار:

live - desert - snake

Aya : Look at this picture. What is this?
Aliaa : This is a (1) ....
Aya : Where does it (2) ....?
Aliaa : It lives in the (3) ....

(C) Reading Comprehension

3 Read and choose the correct answer: اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

Hi! I am Ali. I want to be a teacher. Students always ask surprising questions. Teachers need to think quickly. They need to encourage their students. They need to be very patient. They work for many hours every day. It is hard work, but it is exciting.

- Choose the correct answer:

1. Ali wants to be a/an .... [plumber - teacher - electrician]
2. Students always ask .... questions. [boring - surprising - important]
3. Teachers need to .... quickly. [think - sweep - drive]
4. Teachers need to be very .... [bad - patient - tall]
5. Teaching is hard work, but it is .... [exciting - boring - bad]

(D) Vocabulary and Structures

4 Choose the correct answer: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. A horse is .... than a camel.
   a fast b fastest c faster
2. My dad is Egyptian, ... his dad is French.
   a because b so c but
3. .... children are watching TV.
   a These b This c That
4. The .... is a bird.
   a bear b snake c pelican
5. A .... delivers letters and parcels.
   a mechanic b bus driver c mail carrier

(E) Writing

5 Rearrange the words to make correct sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. grow - Egypt - We - rice - in
   ----
2. helpful - Spiders - are.
   ----
3. Let's - kitchen - organize - our.
   ----
4. post - Where - the - is - office?
   ----

6 Write a paragraph of Four (4) sentences about: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من أربع جمل عن:

A fisherman





17 الإدارة المركزية لمنطقة أسيوط الأزهرية

(A) Listening



1 Listen and choose:
استمع واختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. My father works at the ....
   a hospital   b market   c repair shop
2. My father fixes people's ....
   a legs   b teeth   c hands

(B) Language Functions



2 Read and complete the dialog:
اقرأ واكمل الحوار:

eat - lizards - know

Sara : What animals do you ① .... ?

Tarek : The fennec fox and the eagle.

Sara : What does the fennec fox ② .... ?

Tarek : It eats insects and small ③ ....

(C) Reading Comprehension

3 Read and choose the correct answer:
اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

My name is Zain. I live in a village next to the Nile. I live in a house with my family. Our house isn't the biggest in the village. It is between a yellow house and a brown house. There are tall trees behind the house.

- Choose the correct answer:

1. Zain lives in a .... [city - village - town]
2. There are tall trees .... the house. [near - beside - behind]
3. Zain lives with his .... [family - friends - trees]
4. The house is .... a yellow house and a brown house. [behind - between - beside]
5. The village is next to the .... [sea - desert - Nile]

(D) Vocabulary and Structures

4 Choose the correct answer:
اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. Tomatoes have .... inside.
   a flowers   b leaves   c seeds
2. Camels are .... than horses.
   a slowest   b slow   c slower
3. Crocodiles and snakes .... number of small animals.
   a cross   b control   c carry
4. I like playing tennis, ... I can't play well.
   a and   b from   c but
5. The shopping mall is next .... the museum.
   a to   b in   c at

(E) Writing

5 Rearrange the words to make correct sentences:
أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملا صحيحة:

1. is - big - How - flower - the?

---

2. live - house - I - a - in.

---

3. need - water - sunlight - and - Plants .

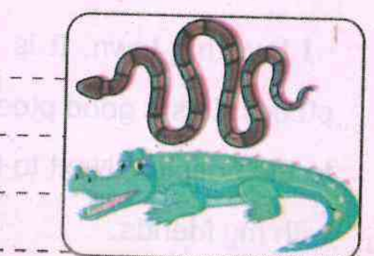
---

4. raise - in - Egypt - We - chickens.

---

6 Write a paragraph of Four (4) sentences about:
اكتب فقرة إنشائية من أربع جمل عن:

Scary animals



Listening Material

نصوص الاستماع الواردة فى الكتاب



نصوص الاستماع الواردة فى الكتاب المدرسى



Review 1

1- Listen and write the words:

1. seeds
2. watermelon
3. fennec fox
4. crocodile
5. emperor
6. leaf
7. onions
8. shoot
9. snake
10. spider
11. roots
12. sugarcane
13. camel
14. palace
15. flower

Review 2

1- Listen and write the words:

1. kitchen
2. mail carrier
3. supermarket
4. garbage collector
5. bedroom
6. plumber
7. living room
8. balcony
9. mechanic
10. bathroom
11. hospital
12. library

نصوص الاستماع الخاصة بأسئلة الاستماع الواردة فى الوحدات والاختبارات الخاصة بكتاب



Bit by Bit



Unit 1

Lesson (1)

Farmers are good for our country. They produce many things. They can grow onions and carrots. They raise chickens. We can see healthy food in Egypt.

Al Azhar Test

My dad is a scientist. He likes walking in the desert, but the desert is very hot.

Activity (1) - Unit 1

Yesterday, I read a folktale from China. It was about the emperor who lived in a beautiful palace. He gave pots and seeds to the gardeners to grow plants. Cheng was only good and honest. Cheng was the next emperor.



Unit 2

Lesson (1)

Crocodiles are huge and scary. They eat meat and fish. They control the number of small animals.

Al Azhar Test

Horses are very fast animals. They eat grass and drink fresh water. They can live up to thirty years.

Activity (2) - Unit 2

Camels are amazing! They are beautiful, strong animals. They help to carry heavy things and people to cross the desert. Their milk is delicious. We can use their fur to make clothes. They can live without water for a long time.

Unit 3

Lesson (1)

Tomatoes are green before they are red. Tomatoes have seeds inside. We can take the seeds and grow new tomatoes. We plant a seed and the plant grows. We water the plant every day and the roots grow under the soil.

Al Azhar Test

Samir is my friend. We go to school by bus. Samir wants to be a doctor, but I want to be a teacher.

Activity (3) - Unit 3

There are different plant habitats. We can't grow plants in any habitat. For example, papyrus needs river habitat because it needs a lot of water to grow. So each plant needs its habitat.



Review 1

Activity (4)

Camels are strong and they can carry people and things across the desert. They are tall animals with thin legs. Their milk is delicious and we can use their fur to make clothes. Camels are good animals for the desert.



Unit 4

Lesson (1)

Omar is a student in primary four. Omar lives in a city. Omar lives with his family. His apartment is very big. It has a big balcony. He likes the living room very much.

Lessons (4 & 5)

My friend Mona works at a supermarket near my house. My family and I see her every week when we buy food. Mona checks the food is fresh. She helps us when we can't find something. She is very kind and happy.

Al Azhar Test

Ahmed is a good boy. He lives in a small village. He goes to a primary school. Ahmed's school is next to the hospital.

Activity (5) - Unit 4

Nada loves her town. It is big, and it has offices, schools, parks, and many other places. Nada's town is clean and quiet. It is a good place to live.



Unit 5

Lesson (1)

There are many interesting jobs. A mechanic fixes buses and cars. An electrician loves things work. A garbage collector collects the trash. A mail carrier delivers your letters and parcels.

Lesson (3)

Amr, Fatma and Farid are cousins. When Amr was a child, he wanted to be an electrician. He always carried a screwdriver. Fatma wanted to be an architect. Farid wanted to be a teacher.

Al Azhar Test

Ihab is a fisherman. He is 40 years old. He goes out on his boat and catches fish.